

# Year 3

# Teaching and Assessment Guide

**Kate Ruttle** 



# Contents

How to use this resource	4
Introduction to Cracking Comprehension	. 6

## FICTION

Unit	Teaching/Practic	e Title	Page
1	Teaching text	Fantastic Mr Fox – Roald Dahl	8
	Practice text	Who's a Clever Girl, Then? – Rose Impey	12
2	Teaching text	<i>Mr Majeika –</i> Humphrey Carpenter	16
	Practice text	The Worst Witch – Jill Murphy	20
3	Teaching text	The Lost Happy Endings – Carol Ann Duffy	24
	Practice text	Clarice Bean – Utterly Me – Lauren Child	28
4	Teaching text	Grandpa's Indian Summer – Jamila Gavin	32
	Practice text	The Man Whose Mother Was a Pirate – Margaret Mahy	36
5	Teaching text	Kitten Rescue – Lucy Daniels	40
	Practice text	Fox Cub Danger – Lucy Daniels	44
6	Teaching text	Theseus and the Minotaur – Kate Ruttle	48
	Practice text	Odysseus and the Trojan Horse – Damian Harvey	52
7	Teaching text	The Enchanted Wood – Enid Blyton	56
	Practice text	The Minpins – Roald Dahl	60

## NON-FICTION

Unit	Teaching/Practice	Title	Page
8	Teaching text	<i>Mountains</i> – Ruth Thomson	66
	Practice text	Coasts – Ruth Thomson	70
9	Teaching text	From Spawn to Frog – Kate Ruttle	74
	Practice text	From Spawn to Frog – Kate Ruttle	78
10	Teaching text	The World – Kate Ruttle	82
	Practice text	The United Kingdom – Kate Ruttle	86
11	Teaching text	Emergency Vehicles – Firefighters – Chris Oxlade	90
	Practice text	Emergency Vehicles – Police – Chris Oxlade	94
12	Teaching text	Cornish Holiday Blog – Kate Ruttle	98
	Practice text	Ken's Summer Holidays on the Isle of Mull – Day 3 – Kate Ruttle	102
13	Teaching text	Rosa Parks – Kate Ruttle	106
	Practice text	<i>Mary Seacole –</i> Kate Ruttle	110

#### POETRY

Unit	Teaching/Practice	Title	Page
14	Teaching text	Walking with My Iguana – Brian Moses	114
	Practice text	A Big Surprise – Michaela Morgan	118
15	Teaching text	Scissors – Allan Ahlberg	122
	Practice text	New School – Kevin McCann	126

#### ASSESSMENT TASKS

E	i	~	÷	i	~	e.	~
١.	ļ	C	L	ļ	v	1	ļ

FICUON	
Task 1: It's Not My Fault – Bel Mooney	130
Task 2: A Cat Called Penguin – Holly Webb	134
Task 3: Go Ahead, Secret Seven – Enid Blyton	138
Task 4: <i>The Goose Girl</i> – Gillian Cross	142
Non-fiction	
Task 5: All About Owls	146
Task 6: The Skeleton	150
Task 7: Vikings in Britain	154
Poetry	
Task 8: <i>Greedy Dog –</i> James Hurley	158
Task 9: A Visit to Yalding – John Coldwell	162

Answers to Assessment Tasks	. 166
Content Domain Coverage	. 168
Content Domains	. 170

## Don't forget to log on to My Rising Stars to access:

- The Interactive Modelling Software
- All teaching notes
- Teaching text questions
- Progress Task sheets for all Assessment Tasks

# How to use this resource

#### Introduce, Listen and Read

- 1 Introduce the unit by sharing the *Key text features* and *Reading the Teaching text* questions in the Teacher's Guide.
- 2 Use the **Read** tab text in the Interactive Modelling Software to introduce the Teaching text. Press the play button to listen to the audio. The **Listening comprehension questions** will be shown on screen. If you prefer, you can read the text yourself.

#### Model

- 1 In the **Question zap** tab, click on the first question to open it.
- 2 Zap the question: Teach children how to interpret the question:

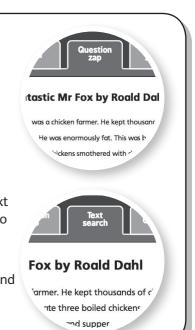
"What is being asked?"

"Which reading strategies will be needed to find the answer?"

Use the on-screen tools to highlight key words in the question.

Answers and strategies are supplied in the Teacher's Guide.

- **3** In the **Text search** tab, use the on-screen tools to highlight any pieces of text that are relevant to the question. Click *Copy to Crack it* to transfer this text to the evidence section of the **Crack it** tab.
- **4** In the **Crack it** tab, use the copied text in the *Evidence* section to write an answer. Compare this with the model answer given in the Teacher's Guide and encourage the children to discuss and consider the relative merits of their own answers and the model answer.



**Fantastic Mr Fox** 

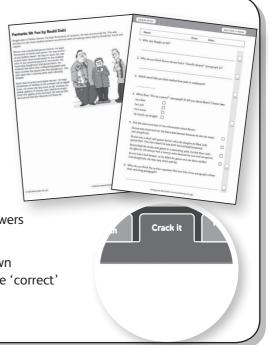
Boggis was a chicken farr

fat. This was because h

~ day for bro

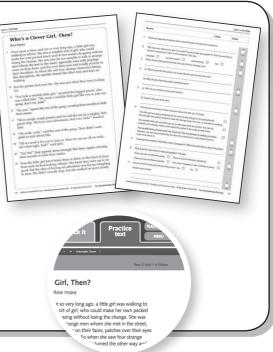
#### Apply

- 1 Give the children copies of the Teaching text and questions so that they can apply the strategies they learned in the previous session. (These can be found in the home screen for each unit, by clicking the *Teaching text* button.)
- **2** Ask the children to work independently and give their own answers.
- 3 In the Question zap tab, select a question. Move to the Crack it tab, and click *Check it* to review the model answer. Repeat for each question. Allow the children to mark their own work as you review each model answer. You can also check answers and strategies in the Teacher's Guide.
- 4 Encourage discussion so that the children can compare their own answers to the model answer. There may be alternative possible 'correct' answers for each question.



#### Practise

- Revisit the key strategies taught using the Teaching text, and then distribute photocopies of the Practice text, and Practice text questions, for children to practise answering the questions, using and applying the strategies taught. (These can be found in the home screen for each unit, by clicking the *Practice text* button, and in the Teacher's Guide.)
- 2 Display the **Practice text** tab in the Interactive Modelling Software. Use the strategies suggested in the Teacher's Guide to mark and discuss the children's answers. Let children mark their own work, although you will want to monitor their answers as part of your ongoing assessment procedures.



#### Extend

Children can extend their learning, either through writing (see *Moving into writing*) or through developing further reading pathways (see *Extending reading*). Brief suggestions for both of these routes are included in each unit of the Teacher's Guide. It is anticipated you will use your professional understanding of effective ways to teach reading and writing if you follow the suggestions.

#### Moving into writing

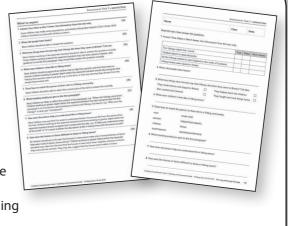
- Reread The Worst Witch
- Talk with the class about how sometimes things can go wrong.
- Use drama techniques to explore things that might go wrong (e.g. trying to change the rules of a game; cheating in a test; trying to help someone who does not want help).
   You could encourage the children to choose comic outcomes.
- Once they have explored ideas in drama, use talk for writing to help the children clarify an idea they want to pursue.
- Give the children time for planning before they write their story

#### Extending reading

- Once Upon an Ordinary School Day Colin McNaughton
- Nag Club Anne Fine Ottoline Goes to School – Chris Riddell

#### Assess

- 1 Introduce the Assessment Tasks through class discussion so that children are clear what they are being asked to do. If appropriate, display the text in the Interactive Modelling Software and read it out. If the text is a playscript or a poem which lends itself well to being read aloud, encourage children to enact some or all of the text over the course of the assessment.
- **2** Provide each child with the question sheet.
- **3** Circulate throughout the task, offering support or challenge as necessary. Allow verbal responses, where required, to enable you to assess understanding independently of reading accuracy.



# Introduction to Cracking Comprehension

#### What is Cracking Comprehension?

*Cracking Comprehension* is a step-by-step resource to improve the comprehension skills of children aged 5–11 years old. It teaches children the skills and strategies they need to successfully explain their understanding of a wide range of texts, and offers ideas to extend their enjoyment of, and engagement with, reading.

The Interactive Modelling Software and this Teacher's Guide will help children to develop the techniques to answer the types of questions asked in the Key Stage 2 National Test for Reading, and help you to deliver the 2014 National Curriculum for English, including the harder question paper which requires more in-depth understanding.

The Assessment Tasks provide a range of assessment for learning (AfL) activities for reading comprehension within the new Primary National Curriculum for Key Stage 2 English. These tasks can be used alongside the teaching units or as stand-alone assessment tasks.

*Cracking Comprehension* comprises both this Teacher's Guide and online access to the Interactive Modelling Software and printable resources on My Rising Stars at www.risingstars-uk.com. The 🗊 icon, used throughout this book, highlights where access to online content is required.

The online access at My Rising Stars provides interactive tools and pupil quizzes for modelling and practice. The Interactive Modelling Software helps teachers and children model key reading skills, and can be followed by the pupil quizzes, where children can practise the skills acquired independently, at home or in small working groups. The online pupil quizzes can be used to track and monitor progress, using the reporting and progress area.

#### What is in it?

*Cracking Comprehension* offers 15 comprehension units and nine Assessment Tasks for each year organised by text type (fiction, non-fiction, playscripts and poetry), and includes full teacher and assessment guidance.

The units have been chosen to support the expectations of the new National Curriculum for Key Stage 2 English. The texts can also be used as resources to complement your wider teaching.

#### Cracking Comprehension and the National Curriculum for English

The 2016 test framework recognises eight 'content domains' which can be assessed in reading tests and which primarily interrogate the reading comprehension objectives of the national curriculum.

The table on pages 168–169 gives a summary of content domain coverage for each comprehension unit and assessment task.

#### How do I use the teaching units?

The pathway through each *Cracking Comprehension* unit is flexible, according to the specific needs of you and your children. (See *How to use this resource* on pages 4–5 for a suggested learning pathway.) Whether you choose to teach a comprehension lesson every day for a week, weekly over a half-term or for a focused half day per half-term is your choice. The range of content domains practised during each unit is clearly indicated. This gives you the opportunity to decide which assessable elements you want the children to practise.

#### How do I use the Assessment Tasks?

The tasks are not tests and are therefore not carried out under test conditions. Children may work on the tasks individually, in pairs or in groups. The tasks encourage a variety of activities including reading out loud, learning by heart and performance, all of which are emphasised in the new curriculum. The tasks may be used in any order.

There are no hard-and-fast time limits for these tasks, and some children may need more time than others. Tasks involving performance will need a greater time allowance than others. We suggest one-and-a-half to two hours on average.

# Gathering and using evidence for diagnostic assessment

The outcomes for each task supply evidence for the regular review of children's progress in reading. The teacher notes provide a question-by-question breakdown giving examples of likely outcomes for each question at three standards of achievement: children working towards the expected standard, at the expected standard and those working at greater depth within the expected standard.

For maximum flexibility, the tasks are designed to be administered in any order, and so a single benchmark standard is required. The benchmark used in all the tasks is the expected standard at the end of the year. As children typically make significant progress over the course of the year, you will need to take this into account when assessing children against expected progress, particularly for any tasks children attempt during the first half of the academic year.

The questions for each task focus on several content domains from the new programme of study.

#### Support for assessment for learning

A simple, tick-based pupil self-assessment sheet for each Assessment Task can be found on My Rising Stars. Use this after the task, to give children the opportunity to reflect on what they can do. Begin by discussing the questions with the class, and then give children an opportunity to fill in the sheets individually. Those struggling with reading may need individual help to fill in their sheets.

Use the self-assessment sheets, together with your own assessment of each child's attainment in the task, to set future targets for reading. A child's completed self-assessment sheet could form the focus of a meeting you have with them about their reading targets.

#### Using Cracking Comprehension with other resources

*Cracking Comprehension* can be used as a standalone resource for teaching reading comprehension, or together with other Rising Stars resources to support your classroom teaching and improve outcomes for the children in your class. Detailed mapping documents, which provide further detail on how *Cracking Comprehension* content can be used successfully with some of the resources listed below, can be found on My Rising Stars.

#### Progress in Reading Assessment (PiRA)

*PiRA* is the best-selling stand-alone reading test which can be used to track children's progress from one term to the next, throughout Key Stages 1 and 2. *Cracking Comprehension* is an ideal teaching tool to ensure good progress through *PiRA* because the texts are of a similar length and demand, and the range and presentation of questions are based on those used in the National Tests. Strategies that are learned and practised in *Cracking Comprehension* are all appropriate and useful for *PiRA*.

#### **On Track Comprehension**

*On Track Comprehension* is a structured intervention programme for children in Key Stage 2 who are falling behind in comprehension. One of the key areas of focus for *On Track Comprehension* is developing vocabulary and skills for working out the meaning of words. This is in response to research which shows that a more limited vocabulary is one of the biggest barriers to accurate comprehension for many children. *On Track Comprehension* also provides opportunities for children to respond to texts orally, before they record written answers.

#### Cracking Writing

*Cracking Writing* units can be used as extension tasks for *Cracking Comprehension*. Each of the *Cracking Writing* units is closely related to a *Cracking Comprehension* unit and includes comprehension questions before going on to use the text extract as a model for writing. Grammar is extensively taught in context in the units.

#### Read in to Writing

In addition to one-off comprehension tasks based on short texts and text extracts, many schools are now opting to read full-length books together, in order to give children opportunities to read and respond to entire good-quality texts. Extracts from some of these texts, or related to the texts, are used in *Cracking Comprehension* in order to build children's familiarity with the texts.

### Unit 1 FICTION

# Fantastic Mr Fox/Who's a Clever Girl, Then? Roald Dahl/Rose Impey

#### Key text features

- The texts show different ways of creating characters through description.
- The Teaching text is an extract from the first chapter of *Fantastic Mr Fox* by Roald Dahl.
- The Practice text is from the beginning of *Who's a Clever Girl, Then?* from *The Pirate Gang* by Rose Impey.

#### Reading the Teaching text: Fantastic Mr Fox

- Introduce the text by asking what the children know about the author Roald Dahl.
- Explain that this text is from the beginning of *Fantastic Mr Fox.* On the basis of the title, can the children predict what the author's attitude to the character is?
- Access the Interactive Modelling Software for this unit. Read the extract aloud. Were the children's predictions correct?
- Ask the children what they know about foxes, particularly the way foxes are portrayed in stories. Make a word web to show ways in which foxes are shown in stories.
- Read the extract again, this time using the modelling software to model 'cracking' the questions together. Remember to look at the model answers and discuss strategies for different question types (see pages 10–11).

#### Reading the Practice text: Who's a Clever Girl, Then?

- Introduce the title of the book: *Who's a Clever Girl, Then?* Who is likely to say words like that? (budgie/parrot) What kind of people own parrots in stories?
- Once they have read the story, remind the children that they are now going to work independently to practise the strategies introduced during the teaching session.

#### Moving into writing

- Reread the Practice text.
- Use drama techniques to explore how the children would react if they saw a variety of characters from traditional tales on their way to school.
- Allow groups of children to explore how stories might continue, depending on the character met on the way to school. What would happen if the character stopped to talk to them? What might the adventure be?
- Once they have explored the ideas through drama and talk for writing, ask the children to write the beginning of the story.



# Listening Comprehension: Questions and Answers



The listening comprehension questions can be accessed on the modelling software for this unit.

Q1:	What do you know about Bean?
A1:	He is a turkey and apple farmer/keeps turkeys in his orchard/never eats food/makes and drinks cider/is thin as a pencil/is the cleverest of all the farmers.
Strategy:	Consider where in the text the information might be found. Listen carefully to that part. Make a note of the words used in the text.
••••	
Q2:	Did any of the farmers eat or drink anything that either of the others farmed?
A2:	No
Strategy:	Listen to the text, considering the question.
••••	
Q3:	Which of the farmers is the shortest and which is the tallest?
A3:	Bunce is shortest, Bean is tallest.
Strategy:	Listen carefully to the text. Make a note of the words used.

#### Extending reading

The Woman Who Won Things – Allan Ahlberg

Cup Final Kid – Martin Waddell

Anna Hibiscus – Atinuke

Fox
Mr
Fantastic
text:
Teaching

	S
	ō
•	Ξ.
•	Ļ
	ŝ
	U
	3
	σ
	Ð
_	
7	
	_
	σ
	2
•	
-	×.
	U.
	ס
	<u> </u>
C	

Question	Answer	CD/Mark	Useful strategies
Why was Boggis so fat?	He ate three chickens with dumplings every	2b	Question focus: identify key details from fiction.
	day for breakfast, lunch and supper/a lot of	1 mark	Strategies:
	food.		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer.</li> <li>Carefully read the paragraph.</li> </ul>
2. Why do you think Bunce always	because he always had a tummy ache	2d	Question focus: make inferences from the text.
had a "beastly temper"		1 mark	Strategies:
(paragraph 2)?			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer.</li> <li>Scan the paragraph to look for reasons why he is bad tempered.</li> </ul>
3. Which word tells you that mashed	"disgusting" (paragraph 2)	2α	Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context.
liver paté is unpleasant?		1 mark	Strategies:
			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer.</li> </ul>
			• Scan that part of the text looking for the words "mashed" and "liver".
			<ul> <li>Caterully read the sentence looking for a word that shows an opinion about the livers.</li> </ul>
4. What does "thin as a pencil"	He is thin.	2α	Question focus: give the meaning of words in context.
(paragraph 3) tell you about Bean?	He stands up straight.	1 mark	Strategies:
Choose <b>two</b> . T He is thin.			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer.</li> </ul>
☐ He is tall.			<ul> <li>Scan that part of the text for the description.</li> <li>Consider the nicture it makes in your head</li> </ul>
He is mean. He stands up straight.			

<ul> <li>Question focus: summarise main ideas from more than one paragraph.</li> <li>Strategies: <ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Can the text for "Bunce" to find the relevant part.</li> <li>Read the paragraphs carefully. Reread the options in the questions and consider which one is the best summary.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Question focus: identify how narrative content is related and contributes to meaning as a whole.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Look at the text and note where paragraphs begin.</li> <li>Think about reasons for starting new paragraphs: new place, new time, new action, new character or new speaker.</li> <li>Think about the reasons for starting most of the new paragraphs here.</li> </ul>
2c 1 mark	2f 1 mark
Bunce was a duck and goose farmer who ate doughnuts filled with goose liver. This diet meant he was both fat and bad-tempered.	He used one paragraph to describe each farmer.
<ul> <li>5. Choose the best summary of the information about Bunce.</li> <li>Bunce was short and fat. He had a bad temper because he ate too many jam doughnuts.</li> <li>Bunce was a duck and goose farmer who ate doughnuts filled with goose liver. This diet meant he was both fat and bad-tempered.</li> <li>Bunce kept his ducks and geese in a swimming pool. He fed them with doughnuts. He always had a tummy ache because he was bad-tempered.</li> <li>Bunce had a bad temper, so he killed his geese and ate them stuffed into doughnuts. He was very short and fat.</li> </ul>	<ol> <li>Why do you think the author organised this text into three paragraphs rather than one long paragraph?</li> </ol>

# Who's a Clever Girl, Then?

Rose Impey

- <sup>1</sup> Once upon a time, and not so very long ago, a little girl was walking to school. She was a sensible sort of girl, who could make her own packed lunch and do her mum's shopping without losing the change. She was also far too sensible to talk to strange men whom she met in the street, especially ones with peg-legs, scars on their faces, patches over their eyes and scruffy parrots on their shoulders. So when she saw four strange characters fitting this description, she quickly turned the other way and kept on walking.
- <sup>10</sup> But the pirates had seen *her*. She was just what they were looking for.
- <sup>12</sup> "You look a sensible little girl," growled the biggest pirate, who was called Jake. "We want a sensible little girl like you to join our gang, don't we, lads?"
- <sup>15</sup> "Yes, yes," agreed the rest of the gang, covering their mouths to hide their smiles.
- <sup>17</sup> "We're rough, tough pirates and we sail the sea in a mighty, fine pirate ship. We have rare adventures, don't we, lads?" boasted Jake.
- <sup>20</sup> "Oh yeah, yeah," said the rest of the gang. They didn't seem quite so sure about this.
- <sup>22</sup> "All we need is for you to join us, then we can go off on raids. Isn't that right, lads?" said Jake.
- <sup>24</sup> "Yes! Yes!" they agreed, more strongly this time, again covering their mouths to hide their smiles.
- Now the little girl knew better than to listen to this kind of story from such wicked-looking villains. She knew they were up to no good. But the idea of having an adventure was far too tempting to miss. She didn't exactly stop, but she walked on more slowly.

1	me: Class: Date:
	Find and copy two things we learn about the girl in the first two sentences.
	" <i>We have rare adventures, don't we, lads?</i> " boasted Jake (paragraph 5). Tick the word that is closest in meaning to " <i>rare</i> " in this sentence. Tick <b>one</b> .
	valuable 🗌 not well cooked 🗌 extraordinary 🗌 few 🗌
	What do you think the little girl thought when she saw the four strange men?
	<b>a)</b> Which word did the author use to describe the parrots the men had?
	<b>b)</b> Why do you think the author used that word?
	a) Who do you think was the pirate leader?
	<b>b)</b> Explain why you think that.
	Tick the best summary of what we know about the little girl. Tick <b>one</b> .
	The little girl was going shopping for her mum to buy things for her packed lunch.
	The sensible little girl wanted to go on an adventure with the pirates. She had her $\Box$ packed lunch already made so she asked the pirates if she could go with them.
	The sensible little girl knew what she should do. She should keep on walking to school. However, she was very tempted by the idea of an adventure so she slowed down to hear more about it.
	<i>"covering their mouths to hide their smiles"</i> (paragraph 4). What does this tell you about the pirates?
	Why does this text have so many paragraphs? Tick <b>one</b> .
	There are lots of different events. $\Box$ There is a lot of dialogue (speaking). $\Box$
	There are lots of different pirates. $\Box$ The action happens in lots of different places. $\Box$
	Do you think the little girl will join the pirates? Yes 🛛 No 🗌
ļ	Explain your answer.

Then?
Girl,
Clever
`sαC
Who
text:
Practice

# **Cracking the questions**

Question	Answer	CD/Mark	Useful strategies
1. Find and copy two things we	She is little.	2b	Question focus: retrieve and record information from fiction.
learn about the girl in the first two		1 mark	Strategies:
sentences.	<ul> <li>Also accept any or these in place or she is is sensible': She can make her own lunch/do the shopping/does not lose the change.</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer.</li> <li>Carefully read that part of the text.</li> </ul>
			Award 1 mark for two correct answers.
2. "We have rare adventures, don't we,	extraordinary	2α	Question focus: give the meaning of words in context.
Tick the word that is closest in		1 mark	Strategies:
meaning to "rare" in this sentence.			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer</li> </ul>
Tick one.			<ul> <li>Carefully read that part of the text.</li> </ul>
valuable			• Carefully reread the options in the question, considering whether each word
extraordinary eew			would make sense in this context.
3. What do you think the little girl	Accept appropriate answers such as:	2d	Question focus: make inferences from the text.
thought when she saw the four	• They are pirates/baddies.	1 mark	Strategies:
strange men?	• I had better turn the other way.		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>A sensible girl would not talk to those men</li> <li>T should not talk to strangors</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Consider where in the text to look for information.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>I wonder what they are doing?</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Carefully read that part of the text, considering the answer.</li> <li>Use your empathy to answer the question.</li> </ul>
4. (a) Which word did the author use	(α) "scruffy"	2a/2g	Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context/explain how meaning
to describe the parrots the men	(b) to show that:	2 marks	is enhanced through choice of words and phrases.
	<ul> <li>the parrots were not looked after very</li> </ul>		Strategies:
(b) Why ao you think the author used that word?	well		• Carefully read the question, marking key words.
	<ul> <li>the parrots were as strange as their owners</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Consider where in the text to look for information.</li> <li>Scan the text for a word that describes the narrots</li> </ul>
			<ul> <li>Think about what the word means and why the author used it here.</li> </ul>
			Award 1 mark for each part of the question.
5. (α) Who do you think was the	(α) Jake	2d	Question focus: make inferences from the text.
pirate leader?	(b) • He is the biggest pirate.	2 marks	Strategies:
(b) Explain why you think that.	He is the pirate that asks the questions.     Lot is the contraination means upon		• Carefully read the question, marking key words.
	<ul> <li>The IS the OHIN phate whose hardened</li> <li>know.</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Consider where in the text the answer will be.</li> <li>Carefully read that part of the text, considering the answer.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>The others agreed with him.</li> </ul>		Award 1 mark for each part of the auestion.

<ul> <li>6. Tick the best summary of what we know about the little girl. Tick one.</li> <li>The little girl was going shopping for her packed lunch</li> <li>The sensible little girl wanted to go on an adventure with the pirates</li> <li>The sensible little girl knew what she should do</li> </ul>	The sensible little girl knew what she should do. She should keep on walking to school. However, she was very tempted by the idea of an adventure so she slowed down to hear more about it.	2c 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: summarise main ideas from more than one paragraph.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully reread the text, underlining all of the information about the little girl.</li> <li>Reread the options in the questions and consider which one is the best summary.</li> </ul>
<ol> <li>"covering their mouths to hide their smiles" (paragraph 4). What does this tell you about the pirates?</li> </ol>	<ul> <li>They are lying.</li> <li>There is something they do not want her to know.</li> <li>They think it (his lie) is funny.</li> </ul>	2d 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: make inferences from the text.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text the quotation came from.</li> <li>Scan the text for the words in the question.</li> <li>Carefully read this part of the text, considering the question.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>8. Why does this text have so many paragraphs? Tick one.</li> <li>There are lots of different events.</li> <li>There are lots of different pirates.</li> <li>There is a lot of dialogue (speaking).</li> <li>The action happens in lots of different places.</li> </ul>	There is a lot of dialogue (speaking).	2f 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: explain how narrative content is related and contributes to meaning as a whole.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Look at the text and note where paragraphs begin.</li> <li>Think about reasons for starting new paragraphs: new place, new time, new action, new character or new speaker.</li> <li>Think about the reasons for starting most of the new paragraphs here.</li> </ul>
9. Do you think the little girl will join the pirates? Yes No Explain your answer.	<ul> <li>Yes</li> <li>They have lots of adventures and she could have some too.</li> <li>She sounds too sensible and it would be good for her to have fun.</li> <li>The fact that she has listened this long means that she has listened this long means that she is interested in their adventures.</li> <li>This is only the beginning of the book. It would be a short book if she said no. No</li> <li>She is too sensible and knows it would be silly.</li> <li>Her mum would worry too much.</li> </ul>	2e 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: predict what might happen from details stated and implied.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Skim-read the text while considering the question.</li> <li>Remember to explain your answer.</li> </ul>

### Unit 2 FICTION

# Mr Majeika/The Worst Witch

## Humphrey Carpenter/Jill Murphy

#### Key text features

- The texts are extracts from 'modern classics' and both are from the first book in the series. These texts are based in schools and both are rich in dialogue.
- The Teaching text is an extract from the first chapter of *Mr Majeika* by Humphrey Carpenter.
- The Practice text is from *The Worst Witch* by Jill Murphy.

#### Reading the Teaching text: Mr Majeika

- Introduce the text by asking if any of the children are already familiar with the *Mr Majeika* books. If so, what can they tell the others about Mr Majeika? Can they predict anything about him from his name?
- Access the Interactive Modelling Software for this unit. Read the introduction, which sets the scene, before reading the extract to the children.
- Read the extract again, this time using the modelling software to model 'cracking' the questions together. Remember to look at the model answers and discuss strategies for different question types (see pages 18–19).

#### Reading the Practice text: The Worst Witch

- Introduce the text by asking if any of the children are already familiar with *The Worst Witch* books. If so, what can they tell the others?
- Once they have read the text, remind the children that they are now going to work independently to practise the strategies introduced during the teaching session.

#### Moving into writing

- Reread The Worst Witch.
- Talk with the class about how sometimes things can go wrong.
- Use drama techniques to explore things that might go wrong (e.g. trying to change the rules of a game; cheating in a test; trying to help someone who does not want help). You could encourage the children to choose comic outcomes.
- Once they have explored ideas in drama, use talk for writing to help the children clarify an idea they want to pursue.
- Give the children time for planning before they write their story.



# Listening Comprehension: Questions and Answers



The listening comprehension questions can be accessed on the modelling software for this unit.

Q1:	How did Mr Majeika get to the school?
A1:	By magic carpet
Strategy:	Consider where in the text the information might be found. Listen carefully to that part. Make a note of words used in the text.
••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
Q2:	How did Mr Majeika turn his magic carpet into a bicycle?
A2:	He pointed a finger at it as he said "That's my bicycle" (paragraph 6).
Strategy:	Consider where in the text the information might be found. Listen carefully to that part. Make a note of words used in the text.
••••	
Q3:	<i>"You could have heard a pin drop"</i> (paragraph 9). What does this mean? Why could you have heard a pin drop?
A3:	It means there was a sudden silence because Mr Potter was surprised and was trying to work out what happened, while Mr Majeika was hoping that Mr Potter would believe him.
Strategy:	Listen carefully to the text. Make a note of words used in the text.

#### Extending reading

Once Upon an Ordinary School Day – Colin McNaughton

Nag Club – Anne Fine

Ottoline Goes to School - Chris Riddell

(	[		)
		ζ	
	•		J
	1		>

Cracking the questions	CD/Mark Useful strategies	Question focus: make inferences from the text. Irk Strategies:	<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer.</li> <li>Carefully read the paragraph and consider who said the words.</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer.</li> <li>Scan the paragraph to look for an excuse.</li> </ul>	Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context.	Irk Strategies:	Carefully read the question, marking key words.	<ul> <li>Scanning text to find the words.</li> <li>Reread that part of the text while you think about the meaning of the</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Nords.</li> <li>Look and in at the choices in the question, then choose the one that has the</li> </ul>	closest meaning.			Question focus: make inferences from the text.	Irk Strategies:	Carefully read the question, marking key words.	<ul> <li>Consumer where in the text to rook for the diswel.</li> <li>Scan that part of the text for words in the auestion.</li> </ul>	Use your own understanding and empathy to think about how the character felt
	Answer CD/	Mr Potter/the headteacher 2d 1 mark		His magic carpet took a wrong turning/rain 2b		He had said something he did not mean 2a	to say. 1 mark							He wanted to fit in.	He did not want Mr Potter to know he was a	<ul> <li>magiciani/nad a magic carpet.</li> <li>He had not meant to say "magic carpet".</li> </ul>		
Teaching text: Mr Majeika 🧔	Question	1. "Now, you're rather late, Mr Majeika. You might have	telephonea me." (paragraph 1) Who do you think said those words?	<ol> <li>What is Mr Majeika's excuse for being late?</li> </ol>		3. "complete slip of the tongue"	What does this phrase mean in this	story? Choose <b>one</b> .	and made an odd sound.	Mr Potter had not heard him	Correctly.	mean to say.	His tongue got muddled when trying to say lots of similar sounds.	4. Why do you think Mr Majeika	"looked bothered" (paragraph 4)	when Mr Potter asked about the magic carpet?		

Ŀ.	. (a) Write a word from the text that describes how someone spoke.	<ol> <li>(a) Write a word from the text that describes how someone spoke.</li> <li>(baragraph 8)</li> </ol>	2a/2g 2 marks	Question focus: give the meaning of words in context/identify how meaning is enhanced through choice of words and phrases.
	(b) Explain why you think the author chose that word.	<ul><li>(b) The word tells the reader how to read the speech.</li><li>The word describes how someone is feeling.</li></ul>		<ul><li>Strategies:</li><li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li><li>Scan the text for words which describe how someone spoke.</li><li>Consider why the author gave you that information.</li></ul>
				Award 1 mark for each part of the question.
6.	. Choose the sentence that	Mr Majeika came on a magic carpet.	2c	Question focus: summarise main ideas from more than one paragraph.
	summarises the most important		1 mark	Strategies:
	information about Mr Majeika s arrival at the school.			Carefully read the question, marking key words.     Carefully read the total while considering are better outlined.
	] Mr Majeika was late.			<ul> <li>Currenting read the text write considering each of the options.</li> <li>Decide which sentence you think summarises the most important and</li> </ul>
	Mr Majeika said he came on a bicycle.			interesting information.
	Mr Majeika came on a magic carpet.			
	Mr Majeika made a mistake when he said " <i>magic carpet</i> ".			

# **The Worst Witch**

Jill Murphy

- <sup>1</sup> The smile faded from the headmistress's face and she sighed, as if with deep disappointment. Mildred felt about an inch high.
- <sup>3</sup> *"Really,* Mildred," Miss Cackle said in a tired voice, "I have run out of things to say to you.
- <sup>5</sup> "Week after week you come here, sent by every member of staff in the school, and my words just seem to go straight in one ear and out of the other. You will never get the Witches' Higher Certificate if this appalling conduct continues. You must be the worst witch in the entire school. Whenever there's any trouble you are nearly always to be found at the bottom of it, and it's just not good enough, my dear. Now, what have you to say for yourself *this* time?"
- "I don't really know, Miss Cackle," Mildred said humbly.
  "Everything I do just seems to go wrong, that's all. I don't *mean* to do it."
- <sup>18</sup> "Well, that's no excuse, is it?" said Miss Cackle. "Everyone else manages to live without causing an uproar wherever they go. You must pull yourself together, Mildred. I don't want to hear any more bad reports about you, do you understand?"



ıme:	Class:	Date:
Who is Miss Cackle?		
How does Miss Cackle feel about Mildred at the begin	ning of this extract?	
<i>"Mildred felt about an inch high"</i> (paragraph 1). An inc What do you think this sentence tells you about how N	• •	ır thumb.
<b>Find</b> and <b>copy</b> the words that show Miss Cackle does r	not think Mildred listens to h	ier.
Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred always getting into trou Find <b>two</b> pieces of evidence for this statement. You do the text.		ations from
":fthis appalling conduct continues" (paragraph 2) W		
"if this <u>appalling conduct</u> continues" (paragraph 2). We underlined words? Tick <b>one</b> . not listening being an inch high		ne as the
underlined words? Tick <b>one</b> .	very bad behaviour Tick <b>one</b> .	ne αs the
underlined words? Tick <b>one</b> . not listening being an inch high Tick the sentence that summarises how Mildred feels.	very bad behaviour Tick <b>one</b> . he did not mean to do.	ne αs the
underlined words? Tick <b>one</b> . not listening being an inch high Tick the sentence that summarises how Mildred feels. She is angry that she is being blamed for something sl She hates Miss Cackle and the school. She is upset that she is in trouble again. She is worried that she will not get her Witches' Higher	very bad behaviour Tick <b>one</b> . he did not mean to do.	ne αs the

2
U
<u> </u>
5
5
st
2
0
>
>
d)
he
_
$\nabla$
6
Ť
e N
.≃
Ļ
2
Ö
2

# Cracking the questions

1. Who is Miss Cackle?       the headmistress       24         1. Who is Miss Cackle?       24         2. How does Miss Cackle feel about       elisoppointed in her       24         2. How does Miss Cackle feel about       elisoppointed in her       24         3. Wildred at the beginning of this       efiel updamoyed ("smile faded")       1 mark         3. Wildred felt about an inch high'       Mildred felt unhappy/sad/insignificant/small       2a         3. Wildred felt about the length       that she is about the blame/in trouble.       1 mark         1 (ine 2). An inch is about the length       that she is about to get the blame/in trouble.       2a         1 (ine 2). An inch is about the length       that she is about to get the blame/in trouble.       1 mark         1 (ine 2). An inch is about the length       that she is about to get the blame/in trouble.       2a         4 filter about the length       that she is about to get the blame/in trouble.       1 mark         1 (ine 2). An inch is about the length       that she is about the blame/in trouble.       2a         4 find and copy the words that show       mark words just seen to go in one ear and out       2a         4 Mildred is feeling?       "may words just seen to go in one ear and out       2a         5 Miss Cackle does not think Mildred feel unhappice is easy to you?       1 mark       2a </th <th>n her a ("<i>smile faded</i>") the calls her "<i>dear</i>" ppy/sad/insignificant/small</th> <th>Arar Arar</th> <th>Question focus: make inferences from the text. Strategies: • Carefully read the question, marking key words. • Scan the text for mention of Miss Cackle.</th>	n her a (" <i>smile faded</i> ") the calls her " <i>dear</i> " ppy/sad/insignificant/small	Arar Arar	Question focus: make inferences from the text. Strategies: • Carefully read the question, marking key words. • Scan the text for mention of Miss Cackle.
How does Miss Cackle feel about       eliseppointed in her         Mildred at the beginning of this extract?       • fed up/annoyed ("smile faded")         extract?       • she likes her – she calls her "dear"         wildred felt about an inch high"       • Mildred felt unhappy/sad/insignificant/small         "Midred felt about an inch high"       Mildred felt unhappy/sad/insignificant/small         "Midred felt about an inch high"       Mildred felt unhappy/sad/insignificant/small         "Midred is feeling?       Mildred is tealout the larme/in trouble.         Find and copy the words that show       "my words just seem to go in one ear and out of the other" (paragraph 1)         Nils: Cackle does not think Mildred       of the other" (paragraph 1)         Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred       Accept any two relevant ideas. E.g.         Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred       estighed as if with deep disappointment.         Find two pieces of evidence for this       estighed as if with deep disappointment.         Mildred is tent       Mildred is sent to her week after week by all meller di sent to her week after week by all meller di sent to her week after week by all meller di sent to her week after week by all meller di services and service.		ark Are	rategies: Carefully read the question, marking key words. Scan the text for mention of Miss Cackle.
How does Miss Cackle feel about       e disappointed in her         Mildred at the beginning of this       • fed up/annoyed ("smile faded")         extract?       • fed up/annoyed ("smile faded")         extract?       • she likes her – she calls her "dear"         'Mildred felt about an inch high'       Mildred felt unhappy/sad/insignificant/small         'Image: An inch is about the length       Mildred felt unhappy/sad/insignificant/small         'Image: An inch is about the length       Mildred felt unhappy/sad/insignificant/small         Mildred is feeling?       Mildred is feeling?         Mildred is feeling?       "my words just seem to go in one ear and out         Mildred is feeling?       "my words just seem to go in one ear and out         Mildred is feeling?       "my words just seem to og in one ear and out         Mildred is feeling?       "my words just seem to og in one ear and out         Mildred is feeling?       "my words just seem to og in one ear and out         Mildred is feeling?       "I have run out of things to say to you"		yara	Carefully read the question, marking key words. Scan the text for mention of Miss Cackle. Carefully read the text around the words howing for cluss
How does Miss Cackle feel about Mildred at the beginning of this extract?• disappointed in her faded") • she likes her – she calls her "dear" • she likes her – she calls her "dear"'Mildred felt about an inch high' (line 2). An inch is about the length (line 2). An inch is about the length this sentence tells you about how Mildred is feeling?Mildred felt unhappy/sad/insignificant/small that she is about to get the blame/in trouble. of the other" (paragraph 1) or '' I have run out of things to say to you" (paragraph 1)Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred istens to her. Find two pieces of evidence for this statement. You do not have to use direct quotations from the text.• disappointem the eval members of staff.Mildred is sent to ner week after week by all members of staff.• Mildred is sent to her week after week by all members of staff.		Arac	cale any read the text a bail a the words, rooking to takes.
Mildred at the beginning of this extract?       • fed up/annoyed ("smile fadea")         • whildred felt about an inch high'       Mildred felt unhappy/sad/insignificant/small (ine 2). An inch is about the length of your thumb. What do you think this sentence tells you about how Mildred is feeling?         • Mildred is feeling?       Mildred felt unhappy/sad/insignificant/small that she is about to get the blame/in trouble. Mildred is feeling?         • Miss cackle does not think Mildred felt unhappy (sad/insignificant/small this sentence tells you about how Mildred is feeling?       • my words just seem to go in one ear and out of the other" (paragraph 1)         • Miss Cackle does not think Mildred is the other.       • of the other" (paragraph 1)         • Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred       • T have run out of things to say to you" (paragraph 1)         Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred       • She sighed as if with deep disappointment. Find two pieces of evidence for this statement. You do not have to use attement. You do not have to use direct quotations from the text.		ark	Question focus: make inferences from the text.
• Mildred felt about an inch high"       Mildred felt unhappy/sad/insignificant/small         • Mildred felt about an inch high"       Mildred felt unhappy/sad/insignificant/small         (line 2). An inch is about the length       Mildred felt unhappy/sad/insignificant/small         of your thumb. What do you think       Mildred is the blame/in trouble.         of your thumb. What do you think       Mildred is feeling?         Mildred is feeling?       Mildred is feeling?         Find and copy the words that show       "my words just seem to go in one ear and out of the other" (paragraph 1)         Niss Cackle does not think Mildred       or         Istens to her.       "I have run out of things to say to you"         Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred       Accept any two relevant ideas. E.g.         Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred       Accept any two relevant ideas. E.g.         Miss Cackle is tired of mildred       Mildred is sent to her week after week by all members of staff.			Strategies:
'Mildred felt about an inch high' (line 2). An inch is about the length of your thumb. What do you think this sentence tells you about how Mildred is feeling?Mildred felt unhappy/sad/insignificant/small that show my words just seem to go in one ear and out of the other" (paragraph 1)Find and copy the words that show Milss Cackle does not think Mildred listens to her."my words just seem to go in one ear and out of the other" (paragraph 1)Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred is cackle is tired of Mildred"T have run out of things to say to you" (paragraph 1)Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred is cackle is tired of Mildred is tatement. You do not have to use direct quotations from the text.She sighed as if with deep disappointment. • Her voice was tired.Mildred is found to be and the outer of the outer of same to be and out or "T have run out of things to say to you" (paragraph 1)She sighed as if with deep disappointment.Mildred is sent to her work after week by all adverse getting into trouble.• She sighed as if with deep disappointment. • Her voice was tired.Mildred is sant to her work after week by all members of staff.• Mildred does not listen to what Miss Cackle says.			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully read the beginning of the text, looking for clues.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>(line 2). An inch is about the length of your thumb. What do you think this sentence tells you about how Mildred is feeling?</li> <li>Find and copy the words that show Mildred is feeling?</li> <li>Find and copy the words that show Mildred is feeling?</li> <li>Miss Cackle does not think Mildred is free other.</li> <li>Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred is free other.</li> <li>Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred and copy the other.</li> <li>Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred is free other.</li> <li>Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred is sent to her week after week by all means to use direct quotations from the text.</li> <li>Midred does not listen to what Miss Cackle says.</li> </ul>			Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context.
or your thumb. What do you think this sentence tells you about how Mildred is feeling? Find and copy the words that show Miss Cackle does not think Mildred listens to her. Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred always getting into trouble. Find two pieces of evidence for this statement. You do not have to use direct quotations from the text.			Strategies:
Milated is retenting?Find and copy the words that show Miss Cackle does not think Mildred listens to her."my words just seem to go in one ear and out of the other" (paragraph 1) orMiss Cackle is tired of Mildred always getting into trouble."my words just seem to go in one ear and out of the other" (paragraph 1) (paragraph 1)Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred always getting into trouble."T have run out of things to say to you" (paragraph 1)Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred always getting into trouble.Accept any two relevant ideas. E.g. • She sighed as if with deep disappointment. • Her voice was tired.Mildred is sent to her week after week by all members of staff.Mildred to sent to her week after week by all members of staff.			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for information.</li> </ul>
Find and copy the words that show Miss Cackle does not think Mildred listens to her."my words just seem to go in one ear and out of the other" (paragraph 1)Miss Cackle does not think Mildred listens to her.or of the other" (paragraph 1)Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred always getting into trouble.or or "T have run out of things to say to you" (paragraph 1)Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred always getting into trouble.Accept any two relevant ideas. E.g. • She sighed as if with deep disappointment. • Her voice was tired.Miss Cackle is tired of the other.Mildred is sent to her week after week by all members of staff.Midred does not listen to what Miss Cackle statement.Mildred does not listen to what Miss Cackle staff.			<ul> <li>Carefully read that part of the text, considering the answer.</li> <li>Use your empathy to answer the question.</li> </ul>
listens to her.       or         "I have run out of things to say to you"         Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred       "I have run out of things to say to you"         Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred       Accept any two relevant ideas. E.g.         Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred       Accept any two relevant ideas. E.g.         I have pieces of evidence for this statement. You do not have to use direct quotations from the text.       Mildred is sent to her week after week by all members of staff.		urk	Question focus: identify how meaning is enhanced through choice of words and phrases.
"I have run out of things to say to you"         Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred       "I have run out of things to say to you"         Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred       Accept any two relevant ideas. E.g.         always getting into trouble.       Accept any two relevant ideas. E.g.         Find two pieces of evidence for this statement. You do not have to use direct quotations from the text. <ul> <li>Mildred is sent to her week after week by all members of staff.</li> <li>Mildred does not listen to what Miss Cackle says.</li> </ul>	-		Strategies:
<ul> <li>Miss Cackle is tired of Mildred</li> <li>Accept any two relevant ideas. E.g.</li> <li>always getting into trouble.</li> <li>Find two pieces of evidence for this statement. You do not have to use direct quotations from the text.</li> <li>Mildred is sent to her week after week by all members of staff.</li> <li>Mildred does not listen to what Miss Cackle says.</li> </ul>	un out of things to say to you" ph 1)		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for information.</li> <li>Carefully read that part of the text, considering the answer.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>She sighed as if with deep disappointment.</li> <li>Her voice was tired.</li> <li>Mildred is sent to her week after week by all members of staff.</li> <li>Mildred does not listen to what Miss Cackle says.</li> </ul>			Question focus: identify key details from fiction.
0	h deep disappointment.		Strategies:
	ice was tired. d is sent to her week after week by all		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for information.</li> </ul>
says.	iers of staff. d does not listen to what Miss Cackle		• Carefully reread that part of the text looking for supporting evidence.
		-	Award 1 mark for each appropriate answer, up to a total of 2 marks.
<ul> <li>Mildred is always at the bottom of any</li> </ul>	a s conduct is appailing. d is always at the bottom of any		
<ul> <li>Mildred is the worst witch.</li> </ul>	e. d is the worst witch.		

<ul> <li>Question focus: give the meaning of words in context.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text the quotation comes from and scan the text to find it.</li> <li>Consider the meaning of each of the options.</li> <li>Choose the best one.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Question focus: summarise main ideas from more than one paragraph.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully read the text while considering each of the options.</li> <li>Decide which sentence you think summarises the most important and interesting information.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Question focus: identify/explain how meaning is enhanced through choice of words and phrases.</li> <li>Strategies: <ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text for words that describe how someone spoke.</li> <li>Consider why the author gave you that information.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Award 1 mark for each part of the question.</li> </ul>	Question focus: predict what might happen from details stated and implied. Strategies: • Carefully read the question, marking key words. • Think about your wider experience of being a reader.
2a 1 mark	2c 1 mark	2g 2 marks	2e 1 mark
very bad behaviour	She is upset that she is in trouble again.	<ul> <li>(a) "in a tired voice" (paragraph 2)/"humbly" (paragraph 3)</li> <li>(b) The words explain how the character is feeling so a reader knows how to read the speech aloud.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Yes</li> <li>She did not like being told off and she wants to try harder.</li> <li>She might get better at hiding getting into trouble.</li> <li>No</li> <li>She says that everything she does keeps going wrong and that is what the book will be about.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>6. "<i>if this <u>appalling conduct</u> continues</i>" (paragraph 2). Which of these means the same as the underlined words? Tick <b>one</b>.</li> <li>not listening</li> <li>being an inch high very bad behaviour</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>7. Tick the sentence that summarises how Mildred feels in this extract. Tick one.</li> <li>She is angry that she is being blamed for something she did not mean to do.</li> <li>She hates Miss Cackle and the school.</li> <li>She is upset that she is in trouble again.</li> <li>She is worried that she will not get her Witches' Higher Certificate.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>8. (a) Write a word from the text that describes how someone spoke.</li> <li>(b) Explain why you think the author chose that word.</li> </ul>	<ol> <li>This text is from the beginning of <i>The Worst Witch</i>. Do you think Mildred stops getting into trouble after this? Explain your answer.</li> </ol>

#### Unit 3 FICTION

# The Lost Happy Endings/Clarice Bean – Utterly Me Carol Ann Duffy/Lauren Child

#### Key text features

The texts show different ways of describing people and places.

- The Teaching text is from *The Lost Happy Endings* by Carol Ann Duffy.
- The Practice text is from Clarice Bean Utterly Me by Lauren Child.

#### Reading the Teaching text: The Lost Happy Endings

- Introduce the text by asking what the children know about Carol Ann Duffy. Explain that she is the poet laureate, which means that she is a very good poet who writes poems for the queen and for special national occasions. She also writes poems and books for children. Now that they know that, what kind of language do they expect in the book?
- Talk about the title of the story and explain that Jub, the main character, has a very important job, which is to collect all the happy endings every morning and let them safely fly into children's homes in the evenings. Can the children make predictions about what might happen in the story?
- Access the Interactive Modelling Software for this unit. Read the extract to the children and ask them if they think their predictions will come true.
- Read the extract again, this time using the modelling software to model 'cracking' the questions together. Remember to look at the model answers and discuss strategies for different question types (see pages 26–27).

#### Reading the Practice Text: Clarice Bean – Utterly Me

- Have any of the class read any *Clarice Bean* stories? If so, ask them what they can tell the rest of the class about her. Explain that the *Clarice Bean* books are written as if they were thoughts running through Clarice's head. Clarice lives with her family, including her irritating brothers.
- Once they have read the story, remind the children that they are now going to work independently to practise the strategies introduced during the teaching session.

#### Moving into writing

- Reread the extract from The Lost Happy Endings.
- Work with the children to use a range of drama techniques to develop the story and decide what might happen next.
- Ask them to draw a story map to show their favourite idea.
- Give the children time to discuss their ideas with a response partner. Together with their response partner, they should orally work up one of their ideas to write.



## Listening Comprehension: Questions and Answers



The listening comprehension questions can be accessed on the modelling software for this unit.

Q1:	At the beginning of the story, what is Jub's sack full of?
A1:	Happy Endings
Strategy:	Think about what you already know about the story, including its title. Listen to the whole extract and see if you can find evidence to confirm your ideas.
• • • • • •	
Q2:	Who called Jub a " <i>deario</i> "?
A2:	An old woman
Strategy:	Consider where in the text the information might be found. Listen carefully to that part. Jot down the words used in the text.
••••	
Q3:	What do you think will happen next?
A3:	
	Accept a range of answers that build on what we already know from the story. (E.g. The old woman takes the sack and keeps all the Happy Endings; Jub fights the old woman and gets the sack back, but not until all the Happy Endings have escaped.)

#### happen next.

#### **Extending reading**

There Is No Dragon in This Story - Lou Carter

Toto the Ninja Cat - Dermot O'Leary

Kid Normal – Greg James and Chris Smith

The Boy Who Grew Dragons – Andy Shepherd

Mr Penguin and the Lost Treasure – Alex T. Smith

Endings
st Happy
ext: The Lo
eaching text

5	Que	~
	6	, ·

F	Teaching text: The Lost Happy Endings	appy Endings		Cracking the questions
	Question	Answer	CD/Mark	Useful strategies
	1. What time of day did Jub set out?	evening	2b	Question focus: identify key details from fiction.
			1 mark	Strategies:
				<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
				<ul> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer.</li> <li>Carefully read the paragraph to find your answer.</li> </ul>
11	2. How did the mist change	The mist is much thicker by the second	2h	Question focus: make comparisons within the text.
	between the first and the second	paragraph.	1 mark	Strategies:
	paragraphs:	In the first paragraph, it's a bit misty but in the second paragraph the mist has thickened.		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully read the first two paragraphs, thinking about what they say about</li> </ul>
				the mist.
				<ul> <li>Consider the differences between "scarves of mist" and "the mist had thickened".</li> </ul>
	<ol> <li>When we first meet her, what information are we aiven about the</li> </ol>	Accept any two of the following.	2g 2 martin	Question focus: explain how meaning is enhanced through choice of words and phrases.
	old woman that warns us that she	<ul> <li>"face like the bark of a tree"</li> </ul>		Strategies:
	isn't going to be kindly. Write <b>two</b> things.	<ul> <li>"horrible claw hands"</li> <li>"fierce red eyes like poisonous berries"</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the words.</li> </ul>
				<ul> <li>Carefully read the relevant section of the text while considering the impact of the words.</li> </ul>
				Award 1 mark for each correct detail given, up to a total of 2 marks.
7	4. "Her touch <u>nipped like pepper.</u> "	Jub's arm stung where the old woman	2α	Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context.
	What do you think the underlined	touched her.	1 mark	Strategies:
	words mean? Choose <b>one</b> .			Carefully read the question, marking key words.
	I he old woman dug her nails into Jub's arm.			<ul> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the words.</li> <li>Scan the text to find the words.</li> </ul>
	The old woman sprinkled pepper onto Jub's arm to hurt her.			<ul> <li>Carefully read that part of the text, thinking about what the words might mean.</li> </ul>
	Jub felt the old woman pinching her.			

Jub's arm stung where the old woman touched her.

her.

<ul> <li>2d <i>Question focus: make inferences from the text.</i></li> <li>1 mark Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for information.</li> <li>Carefully read that part of the text, thinking about how Jub is feeling.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>2c Question focus: summarise main ideas from more than one paragraph.</li> <li>1 mark Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Cansider where in the text to look for the events.</li> <li>Consider where in the events in the question.</li> <li>Carefully read that part of the text and number the events.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Possible answers could include the following.</li> <li>She is frightened the old woman might snatch them away.</li> <li>She does not like the old woman.</li> <li>It is none of the old woman's business.</li> <li>She knows how important the Happy Endings are and she does not want any harm to come to them.</li> </ul>	The old woman grabbed the sack. 4 The old woman grabbed Jub's arm. 1 Jub tripped over a tree root. 3 The old woman spat green spittle at Jub. 2
<ol> <li>Why doesn't Jub want to tell the old woman what is in the sack?</li> </ol>	<ul> <li>6. Number these events to show the order in which they happened.</li> <li>The old woman grabbed the sack.</li> <li>The old woman grabbed Jub's arm.</li> <li>Jub tripped over a tree root.</li> <li>The old woman spat green spittle at Jub.</li> </ul>

# **Clarice Bean – Utterly Me**

Lauren Child

<sup>1</sup> I have to

hop downstairs

- <sup>4</sup> because I have only one slipper. Our dog, Cement, buried the other one in the garden and we can't find it.
- <sup>6</sup> It will probably be discovered in a hundred years from now by archaeological diggers who will say it is fascinating and give it to a museum.
- <sup>9</sup> When I get downstairs, the whole kitchen is full of bad mood. Marcie won't talk to Mum and Kurt won't talk to Marcie. Grandad isn't talking to anyone because he hasn't plugged himself into his hearing aid. Minal is talking to me but I wish he wouldn't. Minal is a niggling gnat and I have to have him sleeping in my room. Sometimes when I want to keep him out, I pile lots of gubbins against the door.
- <sup>15</sup> He is five.
- <sup>16</sup> Who would want to share a room with their five-year-old brother? I don't even need a five-year-old brother. I already have one who is a teenager called Kurt and that is enough brothers for anyone.
- <sup>19</sup> Minal is going, "What time did the spider go to the dentist?"
- <sup>20</sup> I don't bother to listen to the answer because it won't be funny.
- <sup>21</sup> I am trying to read the back of the cereal packet because there is a good offer on rubber pencil-tops.
- <sup>26</sup> Minal is going "Spider clock! D'ya get it? D'ya get it? Spider clock!"

<sup>29</sup> I say "No".



ame:		Class:	Date:
Where is Clarice going at the beginning of the	extract?		2
Find and copy a word or a group of words that	show that the kitch	en is not a happy pl	
What does the author mean by saying that Gr hearing aid"?	andad "hasn't plugg	ged himself into his	20
"Minal is a <u>niggling gnat</u> ".			2 m
What do the underlined words tell us about M	nal? Tick <b>one</b> .		
He is a pet insect. 🗌 He anno	vs Clarice.		2
He hurts Clarice. He sleep	in Clarice's room.		1 m
"I pile lots of gubbins against the door."			
Suggest a different word the author could hav	e used instead of "g	ubbins".	2
How many brothers does Clarice have?			21
Tick <b>three</b> statements that you know are true.			
The dog has taken Clarice's slipper.	The fam	ily is in the kitchen.	
Mum is busy cooking.	Grandad	l is arguing with Ku	rt. 🗌 🔤
Clarice has kept Minal out of her room.	Clarice is	s reading.	2 mo
<b>a)</b> What time of day does this part of the stor	v take place?		
<b>b)</b> Explain how you know.			
			2 m
Tick the statement that is the best description	of Clarice's family.	Tick <b>one</b> .	
They are very calm and organised.	They all hate eac	h other.	
They are quite noisy and disorganised. $\Box$	<b>T</b> I I	supportive of each	other.

Me
tterly
Bean -
Clarice
text: (
Practice

Prac	Practice text: Clarice Bean – Utterly Me	– Utterly Me		Cracking the questions
Question	stion	Answer	CD/Mark	Useful strategies
1. b	Where is Clarice going at the beginning of the extract?	downstairs/to the kitchen	2b 1 mark	Question focus: retrieve and record information. Strategies:
				<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer.</li> <li>Carefully read the paragraph to find your answer.</li> </ul>
	Find and copy a word or a group of words that show that the kitchen is not a happy place to be.	"[the kitchen is] full of bad mood"	2g 1 mark	Question focus: identify how meaning is enhanced through choice of words and phrases.
				<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for information.</li> <li>Carefully read that part of the text, considering the answer.</li> </ul>
ٽم ح م	What does the author mean by saying that Grandad <i>"hasn't</i>	Grandad has not put in his hearing aid.	2a 2 marks	Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context. Strateaies:
94	plugged himself into his hearing aid"?			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the words.</li> <li>Carefully read the relevant section of the text while considering the impact of the words.</li> </ul>
4. "	"Minal is a <u>niggling gnat</u> ". What do the underlined words tell	He annoys Clarice.	2a 1 mark	Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context.
	what do the andermied words ten us about Minal? Tick <b>one.</b> He is a pet insect. He hurts Clarice. He annoys Clarice.			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the words.</li> <li>Scan the text to find the words.</li> <li>Carefully read that part of the text, thinking about what the words might mean.</li> </ul>
т ] []	He sleeps in Clarice's room.			
5. "I	"I pile lots of gubbins against the door."	Stuff/things/belongings	2a 1 mark	Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context. Strategies:
ν σ <sup>*</sup> .,	Suggest a different word the author could have used instead of <i>"gubbins</i> ".			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the words.</li> <li>Scan the text to find the words.</li> </ul>

Scan the text to find the words.
Carefully read that part of the text, thinking about what the words might mean.

30 Cracking Comprehension Year 3 Teaching and Assessment Guide © Rising Stars UK Ltd 2019

6. How many brothers does Clarice have?	Two (Kurt and Minal).	2b 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: retrieve and record information.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer.</li> <li>Carefully read the paragraph to find your answer.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>7. Tick three statements that you know are true.</li> <li>The dog has taken Clarice's slipper.</li> <li>Mum is busy cooking.</li> <li>Clarice has kept Minal out of her room.</li> <li>The family is in the kitchen.</li> <li>Grandad is arguing with Kurt.</li> <li>Clarice is reading.</li> </ul>	The dog has taken Clarice's slipper. The family is in the kitchen. Clarice is reading.	2b 2 marks	<ul> <li>Question focus: retrieve and record information.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Cansider where in the text to look for the information.</li> <li>Carefully read that part of the text and tick the things that you know are true.</li> <li>Award 2 marks for three correct answers (and no incorrect ones).</li> <li>Award 1 mark for one or two correct answers (and no more than one incorrect one).</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>8. (a) What time of day does this part of the story take place?</li> <li>(b) Explain how you know.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>(a) in the morning</li> <li>(b) Clarice is reading a cereal packet (and that is most likely to happen at breakfast time).</li> </ul>	2d 2 marks	<ul> <li>Question focus: make inferences from the text.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for information.</li> <li>Carefully read that part of the text, considering the answer.</li> <li>Scan the rest of the text, looking for words and phrases that will confirm what you thought. Use these ideas in your answer.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>9. Tick the statement that is the best description of Clarice's family. Tick one.</li> <li>Tick one.</li> <li>They are very calm and organised.</li> <li>They are quite noisy and disorganised.</li> <li>They all hate each other.</li> <li>They are always friendly and supportive of each other.</li> </ul>	They are quite noisy and disorganised.	2c 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: summarise main ideas from more than one paragraph.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Skim-read the text, thinking about the question.</li> <li>Jot down or underline any clues in the text.</li> <li>Reread the choice in the questions and think about which one is the best summary.</li> </ul>

#### Unit 4 FICTION

Grandpa's Indian Summer/The Man Whose Mother Was a Pirate Jamila Gavin/Margaret Mahy

#### Key text features

Both of the texts introduce places that are unfamiliar to the characters.

- The Teaching text is from *Grandpa's Indian Summer* by Jamila Gavin, in which two children from the UK first experience the teeming streets of the vast Indian city of Calcutta (now called Kolkata).
- The Practice text is from *The Man Whose Mother Was a Pirate* by Margaret Mahy. In this extract the little man first sees the sea.

#### Reading the Teaching text: Grandpa's Indian Summer



- Introduce the text. Explain that it tells the story of Neetu and Sanjay, who go to India to stay with Grandpa Chatterji. They take their great-grandmother to bathe in the holy River Ganges.
- Access the Interactive Modelling Software for this unit. Read the text aloud to the children while they try to sketch the scene being described. If possible, show some internet images of the busy city.
- Read the extract again, this time using the modelling software to model 'cracking' the questions together. Remember to look at the model answers and discuss strategies for different question types (see pages 34–35).

#### Reading the Practice text: The Man Whose Mother Was a Pirate

- Before they read the text, ask which children have seen the sea. Do they remember when they first saw it and what they first thought of it?
- Once they have read the text, remind the children that they are now going to work independently to practise the strategies introduced during the teaching session.

#### Moving into writing

- Reread the description of the Calcutta street.
- Make a class 'freeze-frame' photo of everything described in the word picture.
- Ask the children to suggest other images in addition to rivers that could be used to describe the busy-ness.
- Challenge the children to write a description of a busy place nearby.

# Listening Comprehension: Questions and Answers



The listening comprehension questions can be accessed on the modelling software for this unit.

Q1:	Do you think Neeta and Sanjay have spent a lot of time with their great-grandmother before this? Explain your answer.
A1:	No: they " <i>studied the old lady</i> " (paragraph 1); they do not know what she likes to do or how important the river has become to her.
Strategy:	Consider where in the text the information might be found. Listen carefully to that part. Make a note of words used in the text.
•••••	
Q2:	<i>"it was a torrent of living creatures</i> " (paragraph 4). What does the word <i>"torrent</i> " mean?
A2:	Flood, river, stream, fast-flowing queue, flow, rush
Strategy:	Consider where in the text the quotation is from. Listen carefully to that part. Consider the meaning of the word.
•••••	
Q3:	What are the clues in this text that the story is set in a different time and place from where you live?
A3:	<i>"Calcutta"</i> (paragraph 1); horses and carriages; bathing in the river; people carrying things on their backs and on their heads; <i>"rickshaws"</i> (paragraph 4), <i>"pigs and horses and cows"</i> (paragraph 4) wandering in the street.
Strategy:	Listen again to the whole text, noting words and phrases that answer the question.

#### Extending reading

Where the Forest Meets the Sea – Jeannie Baker

Meerkat Mail - Emily Gravett

The Owl Tree – Jenny Nimmo

Ч	Teaching text: Grandpa's Indian Summer	Indian Summer 🧔		Cracking the questions
Ø	Question	Answer	CD/Mark	Useful strategies
<del></del>	<ol> <li>List all the people who were in the carriage at the beginning of this extract.</li> </ol>	Neetu, Sanjay, Great-Grandma, Grandpa Chatterji	2b 2 marks	<ul> <li>Question focus: identify key details from fiction.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Think about which part of the text you need to reread to look for answers.</li> <li>Carefully reread that part of the text.</li> <li>Scan the rest of the text for names or descriptions of people to check you haven't missed anyone out.</li> <li>Award 1 mark for two or three people and 2 marks for all four.</li> </ul>
Ň	What does the word " <i>puzzled</i> " (paragraph 2) tell you about Neetu and Sanjay's reactions to the idea of great-grandmother bathing in the river?	<ul> <li>They do not understand it.</li> <li>They think it is an unusual thing to do.</li> </ul>	2a 2 marks	<ul> <li>Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text the answer can be found.</li> <li>Scan the text for the word "puzzled" (paragraph 2).</li> <li>Carefully read the sentence and consider the impact of the word.</li> </ul>
m	"The horses trotted out into the road and joined a human <u>river</u> " (paragraph 4). Why do you think the author chose to use the underlined word in the sentence?	<ul> <li>The sentence before was talking about a real water river.</li> <li>She wants you to imagine how busy it is.</li> <li>People are all moving along together.</li> </ul>	2g 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: explain how meaning is enhanced through choice of words and phrases.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text for the sentence in context.</li> <li>Consider why the author might have chosen the word.</li> </ul>
Ч.	How do you think Neetu and Sanjay felt looking out of the carriage windows?	<ul> <li>surprised at some of the unusual things they saw, such as people carrying things on their heads</li> <li>frightened by the birds swooping, flapping and squawking</li> <li>amazed by the dogs, pigs, horses and cows in the street</li> </ul>	2d 2 marks	<ul> <li>Question focus: make inferences from the text.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Consider where in the text the answer can be found.</li> <li>Scan the text for references to Neetu and Sanjay.</li> <li>Carefully read the paragraph.</li> <li>Use your own experience to think about how the children felt.</li> </ul>

**34** C

Cracking Comprehension Year 3 Teaching and Assessment Guide © Rising Stars UK Ltd 2019

<ul> <li>Question focus: explain how narrative content is related and contributes to meaning as a whole.</li> <li>Strategies: <ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider how the meaning would subtly change if there were commas.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Question focus: summarise main ideas from more than one paragraph.</li> <li>Strategies: <ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Reread the text.</li> <li>Underline each place as it is described.</li> <li>Compare the order of your underlined places with the places listed in the question.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
2f 1 mark	2c 2 marks
keep coming of them this erent things	7 7 7 3 1
<ul> <li>to make it seem as if they just keep coming 2f</li> <li>It sounds as if there are more of them this 1n way.</li> <li>to emphasise the range of different things</li> </ul>	a very busy road a place where people gathered wide, empty streets a bridge
<ol> <li>"It was a torrent of living creatures among which wandered dogs and pigs and horses and cows" (paragraph 4).</li> <li>The author chose to link these animals using "and" instead of just commas. Why do you think she did that?</li> </ol>	<ul> <li>6. Number the places to show the order in which Neeta and Sanjay saw them.</li> <li>a very busy road</li> <li>a place where people gathered</li> <li>wide, empty streets</li> <li>a bridge</li> </ul>

# The Man Whose Mother Was a Pirate

Margaret Mahy

- <sup>1</sup> Suddenly there was the sea.
- <sup>2</sup> The little man could only stare. He hadn't dreamed of the BIGNESS of the sea. He hadn't dreamed of the blueness of it. He hadn't thought it would roll like kettledrums, and swish itself on to the beach. He opened his mouth, and the drift and the dream of it, the weave and the wave of it, the fume and foam of it never left him again. At his feet the sea stroked the sand with soft little paws. Farther out, the great, graceful breakers moved like kings into court, trailing the peacock-patterned sea behind them.
- <sup>10</sup> A rosy sea captain stopped to watch them.
- <sup>11</sup> "Well, here are two likely people," he cried. "Will you be my bo'sun, Madam? And you, little man, you can be my cabin boy."
- <sup>13</sup> "Thank you!" said the little man.
- <sup>14</sup> "Say, 'Aye, aye, sir!'" roared the captain.
- <sup>15</sup> "Aye, aye, sir!" replied the little man just as smartly as if he'd been saying, "Aye, aye, sir!" all his life.



ame: Class: Date:
List all the people who are on the beach in this extract.
How do you know that the little man hadn't ever seen the sea before this? Use a word or phrase from the text in your answer.
Reread paragraph 2. Tick the sentence that summarises this paragraph best. Tick <b>one</b> .
The little man thought the sea was very loud and very big. $\hfill \square$
The little man fell in love with the sea and knew it would never leave him. $\hfill \square$
The little man was surprised that the sea was full of people, animals and birds. $\hfill \square$
"He opened his mouth and the drift and the dream of it, the weave and the wave of it, the fume and the foam of it never left him again." (paragraph 2)
Why do you think the author used pairs of words like drift and dream, weave and wave, fume and foam?
The sea did not really "[stroke] the sand with soft little paws" (paragraph 2), so why did the author use those words?
How does the little man's reaction to seeing the sea help you to understand why he agreed to be a cabin boy so quickly?
<i>"here are two likely people".</i> What does the word <i>"likely</i> " mean in this sentence? Tick <b>one</b> .
They look like they will agree to what he wants them to do.
The sea captain likes the look of them.
They are strangers.
They have nothing else to do but stand on the sand and look at the sea. $\hfill \square$
Do you think the sea captain is going to be a kind man?
Yes 🗌 No 🗌
Use ideas from the text in your answer.

a Pirate
Was a
Mother
Whose
: The Man
e text: Th
Practice

P	ractice text: The Man Wh	Practice text: The Man Whose Mother Was a Pirate		Cracking the questions
0	Question	Answer	CD/Mark	Useful strategies
-	. List all the people who are on the beach at the beginning of this	the little man, a rosy sea captain, a woman	2b 2 marks	Question focus: identify key details from fiction. Strategies:
	extract.			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully read the extract to establish the context.</li> </ul>
				Award 1 mark for one or two people and 2 marks for all three.
'	. How do you know that the little	Accept answers such as the following.	2d	Question focus: make inferences from the text.
	man hadn't ever seen the sea	• He hadn't dreamed of the "BIGNESS" of it.	1 mark	Strategies:
	berore trins? Use a word of prinase from the text in your answer.	<ul> <li>He hadn't thought it would "roll like kettledrums".</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Skim-read the text to gain an overall feeling for the little man's response.</li> <li>Scan the text for ideas/quotations to use in the answer.</li> </ul>
; [] [] [] 4	<ul> <li>Why do you the sea was sentence that summarises this paragraph best. Tick one.</li> <li>The little man thought the sea was very loud and very big.</li> <li>The little man fell in love with the sea and knew it would never leave him.</li> <li>The little man was surprised that the sea was full of people, animals and birds.</li> <li>Why do you think the author used pairs of words like drift and dream, weave and wave, fume and foam?</li> </ul>	knew it would never leave him. The author wants the reader to understand how amazed the little man is by the sea. • The writing is like poetry because it is the	1 mark 29 1 mark	<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Reread the long paragraph, considering the question.</li> <li>Select the best option.</li> <li>Select the best option.</li> <li>Question focus: identify how meaning is enhanced through choice of words and phrases.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> </ul>
		<ul><li>best way to show the little man's feelings.</li><li>Rhythm recreates the ebb and flow/sound</li></ul>		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text for the pairs of words the author uses.</li> </ul>

• Carefully reread the paragraph containing the words while thinking about the

question.Consider the impact of this kind of writing.

The pairs of words begin with the same

letter.

of the sea.

Scan the text for the pairs of words the author uses.

<ul> <li>Question focus: identify how meaning is enhanced through choice of words and phrases.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text for the sentence to understand the context.</li> <li>Think of the image made in the reader's head by that sentence.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Question focus: make inferences from the text.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Skim-read the text, thinking about how the little man feels.</li> <li>Look for words or ideas that help you to know the answer to the question.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Think about which part of the text you need to reread to look for answers.</li> <li>Carefully reread that part of the text.</li> <li>Scan the rest of the text to check that your answer seems right.</li> <li>Carefully read the choices again</li> </ul>	Question focus: predict what might happen from details stated and implied.kStrategies:• Carefully read the question, marking key words.• Consider where in the text to find the answer.• Scan that part of the text, looking for information to include in the answer.There is no mark for the first part of the answer.	<ul> <li>Question focus: identify how meaning is enhanced through choice of words and phrases.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider why the author might have made that decision.</li> </ul>
le and playful 2g et. 1 mark ttion/write ith the same mitate the	ess that 2d a. E.g. 1 mark n. ea.	he wants 2a 1 mark	2e 1 mark Thank	e ship's 2g 1 mark
She is trying to show how gentle and playfuche sea is at the little man's feet. She is continuing to use alliteration/write with lots of words beginning with the same sound. She is using hissing sounds to imitate the sound of the sea.	nat shows awaren n love with the se : to go home agai near the sea. d and feel of the s	vill agree to what	s " <i>rosy</i> ". e little man says "	at sailors say to th
	<ul><li>Accept an answer that shows awareness that the man has fallen in love with the sea. E.g.</li><li>He does not want to go home again.</li><li>He wants to stay near the sea.</li><li>He likes the sound and feel of the sea.</li></ul>	They look like they will agree to what he wants them to do.	Yes • He is described as " <i>rosy</i> ". No • He roars when the little man says " <i>Thank</i> <i>you</i> !" (line 14).	"Aye, aye, sir" is what sailors say to the ship's captain.
The sea did not really "[ <i>stroke</i> ] • the sand with soft little paws" (paragraph 2), so why did the writer use those words? •	How does the little man's reaction A to seeing the sea help you to understand why he agreed to be a cabin boy so quickly?	<i>"here are two likely people".</i> What T does the word <i>"likely" mean in this sentence? Tick one.</i> They look like they will agree to what he wants them to do. The sea captain likes the look of them. They are strangers. They have nothing else to do but stand on the sand and look at the sea.	Do you think the sea captain is going to be a kind man? Yes No Use ideas from the text in your answer.	Why do you think the captain ", wants the little man to say "Aye, co aye sir!" instead of "Thank you!"?

#### Unit 5 FICTION

# Kitten Rescue/Fox Cub Danger

#### Key text features

The texts are both from the Animal Ark series and focus on the experience of a new home.

- The Teaching text is from *Kitten Rescue* by Lucy Daniels.
- The Practice text is from Fox Cub Danger by Lucy Daniels.

#### Reading the Teaching text: Kitten Rescue

- Ask whether the children are familiar with the Animal Ark books. Encourage them to share their experiences of these and other animal rescue books.
- Explain that this is a long-running series and includes over 90 titles. The central characters are a group of children who find and rescue animals in trouble, and help them with the aid of a vet's surgery called 'Animal Ark'.
- Access the Interactive Modelling Software for this unit. Read the extract to the children and ask them to think about the experience of moving home.
- Read the extract again, this time using the modelling software to model 'cracking' the questions together. Remember to look at the model answers and discuss strategies for different question types (see pages 42–43).

#### Reading the Practice text: Fox Cub Danger

- What do the children remember about the Animal Ark books?
- What kinds of danger might a fox cub be in?
- Once they have read the extract, remind the children that they are now going to work independently to practise the strategies introduced during the teaching session.

#### Moving into writing

- Reread these extracts, inviting the children to compare the two experiences of moving home.
- Explain to the children that they are going to write their own story about rehoming an animal.
- In groups, ask the children to think of a range of ideas about why an animal might need a new home (e.g. its home is not safe/has disappeared/has been destroyed; a pet owner may not be able to look after it; the animal might be lost or injured).
- Ask pairs to select an animal for the focus of their story and then research appropriate homes and conditions for the animal.
- Still in their pairs, ask them to plan their story.
- Encourage each child to tell their story to a response partner and receive feedback before writing.
- Give the children the opportunity to write their story.



### Listening Comprehension: Questions and Answers



The listening comprehension questions can be accessed on the modelling software for this unit.

Q1:	What did Mum suggest was the first thing that Amelia did?
A1:	Put her animal books away.
Strategy:	Think about where in the text you would find the answer to this question. Listen to that part of the text again.
••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
Q2:	What did Mum say to try to make Amelia feel better?
A2:	"But don't worry."/"We're going to be very happy living here with Gran, I promise."
Strategy:	Listen to the whole text again, thinking about how Mum tried to help.
••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
Q3:	Why did Amelia try her best not to sound too gloomy?
A3:	She didn't want Mum to feel bad./She was trying to support her mum.
Strategy:	Listen to the whole text again, thinking about why Amelia would try to pretend.

#### **Extending reading**

The Animal Ark series – Lucy Daniels The Racehorse Who Wouldn't Gallop – Claire Balding Beast Quest series – Adam Blade Henry Haynes and the Great Escape – Karen Inglis I Believe in Unicorns – Michael Morpurgo

Rescue
Kitten
text:
Teaching

# Cracking the questions

Ollestion	Answer	CD/Mark	Useful strategies
<ol> <li>At the start of this extract, Amelia has just moved house.</li> <li>Explain how we know this using ideas from the text. You do not have to copy words.</li> </ol>	<ul> <li>She is in her "new bedroom".</li> <li>There is still a pile of packing boxes in the room.</li> <li>All her things are still in boxes.</li> </ul>	2d 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: explain and justify inferences with evidence from the text.</li> <li>Question focus: explain and justify inferences with evidence from the text.</li> <li>Strategies: <ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully read the section indicated, looking for evidence that Amelia has just moved house.</li> <li>Give either direct quotations or paraphrase their meaning.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<ol> <li>Why did Amelia sit down on her bed with a sigh?</li> </ol>	"a sudden rush of homesickness came over her"	2b 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: identify key details from fiction.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text for the information in the question.</li> <li>Carefully read the sentences around the information, considering the question.</li> </ul>
<ol> <li>Look at the paragraph beginning "Mum sat next to her".</li> <li>Find and copy one word that means the same as kind and friendly.</li> </ol>	"warm"	2a 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the paragraph indicated, looking for a word with this meaning.</li> <li>Carefully reread the sentence containing the word to check your response.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>4. "I'm fine, Mum. Honest." What does this statement tell you about Amelia? Choose one.</li> <li>She is just pretending to be sad.</li> <li>She is trying to be brave.</li> <li>She is feeling sick and unwell.</li> <li>She does not want to unpack.</li> </ul>	She is trying to be brave	2d 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: make inferences from the text.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text for the words in the question.</li> <li>Carefully read the sentences around the words, considering what they tell you about Amelia.</li> <li>Read the options in the question and tick the one that is closest to your understanding.</li> </ul>

Question focus: make comparisons within the text. Strategies: • Carefully read the question, marking key words.	• Think about each of the statements separately. Consider where in the text you will find relevant information.	<ul> <li>Carefully read the relevant sections of the text to decide which bedroom each thing was in.</li> </ul>	Award 2 marks for all four answers correct.	Award I mark for unree answers correct.	<ul> <li>Question focus: summarise main ideas from more than one paragraph.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Skim-read the text for an overall impression of the main ideas.</li> <li>Carefully read the options in the question and select the one that best matches your ideas.</li> </ul>
2h 2 marks					2c 1 mark
	z	0	0	z	
	a bookshelf above the bed	a bookshelf beside the door	stars on the ceiling	the sloping ceiling	Amelia's New Home
in if it was					a good
<ol> <li>Write O if the thing was in Amelia's old room, or 'N' if it was in her new one.</li> </ol>	a bookshelf above the bed	a bookshelf beside the door	stars on the ceiling	the sloping ceiling	<ul> <li>6. Which of these would be a good title for this extract?</li> <li>Choose one.</li> <li>Living with Gran</li> <li>Unpacking Books</li> <li>Amelia's New Home</li> <li>Amelia Is Upset</li> </ul>

# **Fox Cub Danger**

Lucy Daniels

- <sup>1</sup> Amelia and her friends are in a hide, watching as they try to rehome a family of foxes to an old badger sett. The male fox has been at the vet's following a road accident.
- <sup>4</sup> A long snout poked out of one of the boxes. Amelia held her breath as the male fox emerged. His pointed ears were pricked, and he sniffed the dawn air. His leg and ear were both completely healed now, and he moved easily as he snuffled at the other boxes. *He must be so pleased to be outside again*, Amelia thought.
- <sup>9</sup> The female fox stepped out of her box, peering around curiously. Then she stared at the male fox. He stared back.
- <sup>11</sup> "Let's hope they remember each other," murmured Mrs Hope.
- <sup>12</sup> The pair padded towards each other. Then their noses touched, and Amelia felt a swell of joy as the male fox rubbed his head against the vixen's side. The cubs came out of their box, tumbling over each other. The largest cub scampered to the old badger sett and sniffed at it – and then trotted into one of the holes.
- 17 Please let them like their new home, Amelia thought.
- <sup>18</sup> The mother fox followed her cub inside. The other cubs went after her. Finally, the male fox went inside. Amelia glanced around the hide. Everyone was smiling with relief and happiness.
- <sup>21</sup> The fox family darted in and out of the sett, the cubs playing together, rolling and squirming in the undergrowth while their parents looked on.



•••••	lame:		Class:	Date:
	Look at the paragraph beginning "A long snout	" · · ·		
	What does the word " <i>emerged</i> " mean? Tick <b>one</b> .			:
	came out 📋 👘 ran away 📋	sneezed	sniffed	1 r
	The male fox has been injured before.			
	Find evidence from the paragraph beginning "A la do not have to copy words.	ong snout" to su	pport this statement.	You
	Find and copy one word that tells you what time	of day it was when	the first fox sniffed th	ne air.
	How did the male and female foxes greet each ot	her?		1r
	The writer describes the fox cubs as "tumbling ove	er each other".		
	How does this tell us they are feeling? Tick <b>one</b> .			2
	aggressive angry	playful 📋	surprised	1 r
	The people watching the foxes were feeling happ	v.		
	The people watching the foxes were feeling happ <b>Find</b> and <b>copy one</b> group of words that is evidence	-	ıt.	
		-	it.	
		ce for this statemer	ıt.	
	Find and copy one group of words that is evidend Which of these would be a good title for this extra	ce for this statemer	ıt.	1 r
	Find and copy one group of words that is evidend Which of these would be a good title for this extra	act? Tick <b>one</b> .	ıt.	1r
	Find and copy one group of words that is evidend         Which of these would be a good title for this extra         Inside the Hide       The Foxes         At the Badger's Sett       Everyone	act? Tick <b>one</b> . "New Home Is Happy	ıt.	1r
	Find and copy one group of words that is evidend         Which of these would be a good title for this extra         Inside the Hide	act? Tick <b>one</b> . "New Home Is Happy	ıt.	1 r 
	Find and copy one group of words that is evidend         Which of these would be a good title for this extra         Inside the Hide       The Foxes         At the Badger's Sett       Everyone	act? Tick <b>one</b> . "New Home Is Happy	ıt.	1r
	Find and copy one group of words that is evidend         Which of these would be a good title for this extra         Inside the Hide	act? Tick <b>one</b> . act? Tick <b>one</b> . a New Home Is Happy new home?		1 r
	Find and copy one group of words that is evidend         Which of these would be a good title for this extra         Inside the Hide       The Foxes         At the Badger's Sett       Everyone         Do you think the fox family will like living in their         Give ideas from the text in your answer.	ce for this statemer act? Tick <b>one</b> . 3' New Home Is Happy Is Happy new home?		1 r
	Find and copy one group of words that is evidend         Which of these would be a good title for this extra         Inside the Hide       The Foxes         At the Badger's Sett       Everyone         Do you think the fox family will like living in their in         Give ideas from the text in your answer.         Draw lines to join groups of words from the text to	ce for this statemer act? Tick <b>one</b> . 5' New Home Is Happy new home? o what they tell you The adult foxe The fox was tr	J. s remembered each o ying to find out what	1r
	Find and copy one group of words that is evidend         Which of these would be a good title for this extra         Inside the Hide       The Foxes         At the Badger's Sett       Everyone         Do you think the fox family will like living in their for         Give ideas from the text in your answer.         Draw lines to join groups of words from the text to         The fox "snuffled at the other boxes".         "their noses touched"         The largest cub "trotted into one of the	ce for this statemer act? Tick <b>one</b> . 5' New Home Is Happy Is Happy new home? o what they tell you The adult foxe The fox was tr in the other bo The cubs were	J. s remembered each o ying to find out what oxes. playing in an area	1r
	Find and copy one group of words that is evidend         Which of these would be a good title for this extra         Inside the Hide       The Foxes         At the Badger's Sett       Everyone         Do you think the fox family will like living in their to         Give ideas from the text in your answer.         Draw lines to join groups of words from the text to         The fox "snuffled at the other boxes".         "their noses touched"	ce for this statemer act? Tick one. a' New Home Is Happy Is Happy new home? The adult foxe The fox was try in the other bo The cubs were surrounded by	J. s remembered each o ying to find out what oxes. playing in an area	1r

٩	Practice text: Fox Cub Danger	ıger		
	Question	Answer	CD/Mark	Useful strategies
	<ol> <li>Look at the paragraph beginning "A long snout".</li> <li>What does the word "emerged" mean? Tick one.</li> <li>came out</li> <li>ran away</li> <li>sneezed</li> </ol>	came out	2a 1 mark	<i>Question focus: explain</i> Strategies: • Carefully read the qu • Scan the paragraph i • Carefully read the se question with the sar
, ,	<ol> <li>The male fox has been injured before.</li> <li>Find evidence from the paragraph beginning "A long snout" to support this statement. You do not have to copy words.</li> </ol>	<ul> <li>We are told his ear and leg are "completely healed", so we know he was injured.</li> <li>We are told "he moved easily", so he must have found it difficult to move before.</li> <li>We are told that he "must be so pleased to be outside again", so he must have been inside or at the vet's.</li> </ul>	2d 1 mark	<i>Question focus: explain</i> Strategies: • Carefully read the qu • Carefully read the seithe vet's. • Give either direct quo
	<ol> <li>Find and copy one word that tells you what time of day it was when the first fox sniffed the air.</li> </ol>	"dawn"	2b 1 mark	Question focus: identify Strategies: • Carefully read the qu • Consider where in th
~	<ol> <li>How did the male and female foxes greet each other?</li> </ol>	"their noses touched"/they touched noses Also accept: "the male fox rubbed his head against the vixen's side"	2b 1 mark	Question focus: identify Strategies: • Carefully read the qu • Consider where in thu

i o n	
Cracking the questions	
nb	
the	
, bu	
cki	ext.
Cra	n context.
	5

<ol> <li>Look at the paragraph beginning "A long snout".</li> <li>What does the word "emerged" mean? Tick one.</li> <li>came out</li> <li>ran away</li> <li>sneezed</li> </ol>	came out	2a 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the paragraph indicated, looking for the word.</li> <li>Carefully read the sentence containing the word, then identify the word(s) in the question with the same meaning.</li> </ul>
<ol> <li>The male fox has been injured before.</li> <li>Find evidence from the paragraph beginning "A long snout" to support this statement. You do not have to copy words.</li> </ol>	<ul> <li>We are told his ear and leg are "completely healed", so we know he was injured.</li> <li>We are told "he moved easily", so he must have found it difficult to move before.</li> <li>We are told that he "must be so pleased to be outside again", so he must have been inside or at the vet's.</li> </ul>	2d 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: explain and justify inferences with evidence from the text.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully read the section indicated, looking for evidence that the fox has been at the vet's.</li> <li>Give either direct quotations or paraphrase their meaning.</li> </ul>
<ol> <li>Find and copy one word that tells you what time of day it was when the first fox sniffed the air.</li> </ol>	"dawn"	2b 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: identify key details from fiction.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text you will find the information.</li> <li>Carefully read that part of the text, considering the question.</li> </ul>
<ol> <li>How did the male and female foxes greet each other?</li> </ol>	"their noses touched"/they touched noses Also accept: "the male fox rubbed his head against the vixen's side"	2b 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: identify key details from fiction.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text you will find the information.</li> <li>Carefully read that part of the text, considering the question.</li> </ul>
<ol> <li>The writer describes the fox cubs as "tumbling over each other".</li> <li>How does this tell us they are feeling?</li> <li>Tick one.</li> <li>aggressive angry</li> <li>playful surprised</li> </ol>	playful	2g 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: identify how meaning is enhanced through choice of words and phrases.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text, looking for the words in the question.</li> <li>Scan the text, looking for the words in the question.</li> <li>Carefully read the sentences around the words, considering their impact and thinking about why the writer chose to use them.</li> </ul>
<ol> <li>The people watching the foxes were feeling happy.</li> <li>Find and copy one group of words that is evidence for this statement.</li> </ol>	<ul> <li>Accept any of:</li> <li>"Amelia felt a swell of joy"</li> <li>"swell of joy"</li> <li>"Everyone was smiling with relief and happiness."</li> <li>"relief and happiness"</li> </ul>	2d 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: explain and justify inferences with evidence from the text.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Skim-read the text for an overall feeling about the people's reactions.</li> <li>Scan the text, looking for evidence of the reactions.</li> <li>Remember to give direct quotations from the text.</li> </ul>

<ul> <li>2c Question focus: summarise main ideas from more than one paragraph.</li> <li>1 mark Strategies: <ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully read the text for an overall impression about the main ideas.</li> <li>Carefully read the options in the question and select the one that best matches your ideas.</li> </ul> </li></ul>	<ul> <li>2e Question focus: predict what might happen from details stated and implied.</li> <li>ne. 1 mark Strategies:         <ul> <li>• Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>• Skim-read the text for an overall feeling about the fox family's reaction to their new home.</li> <li>• Scan the text, looking for evidence of the foxes' reactions.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul> <li>2d Question focus: explain and justify inferences with evidence from the text.</li> <li>2 marks</li> <li>5 carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>e Carefully read proup of quoted words.</li> <li>For each group, carefully read the sentence in which it appears and think about what you are being told.</li> <li>e Carefully read the options in the question again, linking the words with their meaning.</li> <li>Award 2 marks for all four answers correct.</li> <li>Award 1 mark for two answers correct.</li> </ul>	
The Foxes' New Home	Accept any evidence from the story that the foxes are likely to be happy in their new home. • Yes: all the foxes went happily into the sett. • Yes: they were darting happily in and out of the sett.	by The a remeted the factor and the factor and the factor and the context out with the context of the context o	undergrowth". to go into.
<ul> <li>7. Which of these would be a good title for this extract? Tick one.</li> <li>Inside the Hide</li> <li>At the Badger's Sett</li> <li>The Foxes' New Home</li> <li>Everyone Is Happy</li> </ul>	<ol> <li>Bo you think the fox family will like living in their new home? Give ideas from the text in your answer.</li> </ol>	to join g ed ne be	undergrowth". to go into.

#### Unit 6 FICTION

# Theseus and the Minotaur/Odysseus and the Trojan Horse Kate Ruttle/Damian Harvey

#### Key text features

The texts are both legends from Ancient Greece.

- The Teaching text is from Theseus and the Minotaur retold by Kate Ruttle.
- The Practice text is from Odysseus and the Trojan Horse retold by Damian Harvey.

#### Reading the Teaching text: Theseus and the Minotaur

- Ask the children if they know any legends from Ancient Greece. Remind them that legends are generally based on real heroes, but have often evolved to include fictional monsters and events. Clarify that there was no such place as Greece in Ancient times. The country was divided into city states, each with its own ruler. The city states were often at war.
- Ask the children if they have heard of the Minotaur. What do they know about it?
- Write the names 'Theseus' (*/thee-see-us/*) and 'Ariadne' (*/a-ree-ad-nee/*) the children to see, and discuss pronunciation.
- Access the Interactive Modelling Software for this unit. Read the extract to the children and ask them to reflect on whether any parts of the story might be based on the truth.
- Read the extract again, this time using the modelling software to model 'cracking' the questions together. Remember to look at the model answers and discuss strategies for different question types (see pages 50–51).

#### Reading the Practice text: Odysseus and the Trojan Horse

- Ask the children if they have heard the story of the wooden horse of Troy. What do they know about it?
- Write the name 'Odysseus' (*/oh-dee-see-us/*) for the children to see, and discuss pronunciation.
- Once they have read the extract, remind the children that they are now going to work independently to practise the strategies introduced during the teaching session.

#### Moving into writing

- Reread both text extracts.
- Explain to the children that they are going to complete one of the legends.
- In pairs, ask the children to choose one of the stories and to research it so they know how it concludes.
- Give them an opportunity to use drama to deepen their understanding of the events and to develop an appropriate vocabulary.
- Still in their pairs, ask them to plan their story.
- Encourage each child to tell their story to a response partner and receive feedback before writing.
- Give the children the opportunity to write their own version of one of the legends.
- 48 Cracking Comprehension Year 3 Teaching and Assessment Guide © Rising Stars UK Ltd 2019



### Listening Comprehension: Questions and Answers



The listening comprehension questions can be accessed on the modelling software for this unit.

Q1:	Why did the king of Athens send the young people away to be fed to the Minotaur?
A1:	He was trying to stop King Minos from declaring war on Athens.
Strategy:	Think about where in the text you would find the answer to this question. Listen to that part of the text again.
••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
Q2:	What did Theseus intend to do?
A2:	Kill the monster.
Strategy:	Think about where in the text you would find the answer to this question. Listen to that part of the text again.
••••	
Q3:	What did Ariadne want Theseus to do in return for her help?
A3:	Help her to escape from the island.
Strategy:	Think about where in the text you would find the answer to this question. Listen to that part of the text again.

#### Extending reading

Greek Myths for Young Children – Heather Amery

Greek Myths – Marcia Williams

A Child's Introduction to Greek Mythology – Heather Alexander

Illustrated Stories from the Greek Myths - Usborne

_	
Minotaur	
the	
and	
Theseus	
text:	
Teaching	)

# **Cracking the questions**

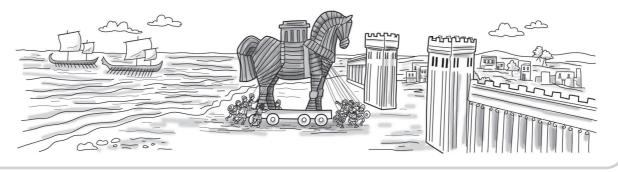
Τεαι	Teaching text: Theseus and the Minotaur	d the Minotaur		Cracking the questions
Que	Question	Answer	CD/Mark	Useful strategies
1. L	Look at the first paragraph.	"peace offering"	2α	Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context.
<u> </u>	Find and copy two words that		1 mark	Strategies:
0 4 2	mean a gift given to someone so they won't start a fight or continue an argument.			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully read the paragraph indicated, looking for two words with the meaning given in the question.</li> </ul>
2. 7	The Minotaur was a dangerous	<ul> <li>It ate people.</li> </ul>	2b	Question focus: identify key details from fiction.
5	monster.	• It was fearsome.	1 mark	Strategies:
<u></u> σ >	Find evidence to support this statement. You do not have to copy words.	<ul> <li>It "had the body of a strong man but the head of a bull".</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text you will find the information.</li> </ul>
э. Т	The writer states that Theseus	aggressive	2g	Question focus: identify how meaning is enhanced through choice of words
3	"stormed at his father".		1 mark	and phrases.
-	How does this tell us he was			Strategies:
<u> </u>	feeling?			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
	Choose <b>one</b> .			<ul> <li>Scan the text, looking for the words in the question.</li> </ul>
	aggressive			<ul> <li>Carefully read the sentences around the words, considering their impact and thinking about why the writer chose to use them.</li> </ul>
	determined			
	excirea disappointed			
4.	Why did Ariadne vow to help	Accept answer that recognises either of the	2d	Question focus: make inferences from the text.
	Theseus?	following.	1 mark	Strategies:
		She fell in love with him and did not want		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>The Minotaur to eat nim.</li> <li>She thought that if she helped him he</li> </ul>		Scan the text for the key word in the question.
		would help her.		<ul> <li>Carefully read the sentences around the word, considering what they tell wound shout Arizotan</li> </ul>
				<ul> <li>Think about what you already know that might explain her actions.</li> </ul>

2e       Question focus: predict what might happen from details stated and implied.         1 mark       Strategies:         • Carefully read the question, marking key words.         • Skim-read the text for an overall impression about the main ideas.         • Scan the text for information about the sword.         • Think about what you already know that might explain what Theseus should do with the sword.	T       2b       Question focus: identify key details from fiction.         F       2 marks       Strategies:         F       • Carefully read the question, marking key words.         • Think about each of the statements separately. Consider where in the text you will find relevant information.         • Carefully read the relevant sections of the text to decide whether each statement is true or false.         Award 2 marks for all four answers correct.         Award 1 mark for three answers correct.
Kill the Minotaur.	The Minotaur ate people.       1         The Minotaur lived in the palace.       F         The Minotaur lived in Athens.       F         The Minotaur had the head of a man       F         and the body of a bull.       F
5. What did Ariadne expect Theseus to do with the sword?	6. Choose which of the following facts are <b>true</b> and which are <b>false</b> (see right).

# **Odysseus and the Trojan Horse**

Damian Harvey

- <sup>1</sup> The Ancient Greek commander Odysseus led his army to war with Troy.
- <sup>2</sup> The Greek army tried their best to climb the walls and to break down the gates of the Trojan city, but it was no use. The walls were too high and the gates were too strong. The Trojans fought them off every time.
- <sup>6</sup> Odysseus paused for a moment. "We must get into the city," he thought. "But how can we do it?"
- <sup>8</sup> Then, clever Odysseus had an idea. "Build me a great wooden horse," he ordered. "And make it big enough for me and my men to fit inside."
- <sup>11</sup> No one really knew what Odysseus was up to, but for many days and nights the Greeks worked hard to build a huge wooden horse. When it was ready, Odysseus led his men inside. "Now we will trick the Trojans," he said.
- <sup>15</sup> The Greek armies burnt their camps and pretended to sail back to Sparta, leaving only the wooden horse behind on the beach. When the Trojans saw the Greeks sailing away they raced down onto the beach.
- <sup>19</sup> They could hardly believe their eyes.
- <sup>20</sup> "We've won!" they cheered. "The Greeks have gone! And look," they cried, admiring the great wooden horse, "the Greeks have left us a gift."
- <sup>23</sup> Together, the Trojans pushed the horse up the beach and towards the gates of Troy.
- <sup>25</sup> Inside, Odysseus and his men were keeping very quiet. "Don't make a sound," hushed Odysseus. He knew that if the Trojans heard them, his plan would fail.



		Class:		Date:
Which word in the opening sentence tells you that Odys Greek army?	seus was	in charge of	the	
Why was the Greek army not able to win the fight agains	st the Tro	ijans?		
"Build me a great wooden horse."				
Which word is "great" closest in meaning to? Tick <b>one</b> .				
famous 🗌 huge 🗌 importa	nt 🗌	W	onderful	
Look at the paragraph beginning "No one really knew	•			
<b>Find</b> and <b>copy one</b> word that tells you that Odysseus has the walls of Troy.	s a plan t	hat does <i>not</i>	involve cli	mbing
Why do you think the Greek armies burnt their camps an	d preten	ded to sail av	way?	
The Trojans were happy when they saw the Greeks sailin	away			
Find and copy one piece of evidence for this statement.				
Put <b>one</b> tick in each row of the table to show whether ea	ch stater	nent is <b>true</b> d	or <b>false</b> .	
	True	False		
The city of Troy had high walls and strong gates.				
The city of Troy had high walls and strong gates. The Greeks built the wooden horse in one night.				
The Greeks built the wooden horse in one night.				
The Greeks built the wooden horse in one night.         The Greeks left the wooden horse inside the city.				
The Greeks built the wooden horse in one night.The Greeks left the wooden horse inside the city.The Trojans admired the horse.				
The Greeks built the wooden horse in one night.         The Greeks left the wooden horse inside the city.         The Trojans admired the horse.         Number these events to show what Odysseus planned.				
The Greeks built the wooden horse in one night.         The Greeks left the wooden horse inside the city.         The Trojans admired the horse.         Number these events to show what Odysseus planned.         Greek soldiers hide inside the wooden horse.				
The Greeks built the wooden horse in one night.         The Greeks left the wooden horse inside the city.         The Trojans admired the horse.         Number these events to show what Odysseus planned.         Greek soldiers hide inside the wooden horse.         Greek soldiers build a wooden horse.				

Horse
Trojan
d the
us and
dysse
text: 0
Practice

# **Cracking the questions**

Question	Answer	CD/Mark	Useful strategies
<ol> <li>Which word in the opening sentence tells you that Odysseus was in charge of the Greek army?</li> </ol>	"commander"	2a 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully read the sentence indicated, looking for one word with the meaning given in the question.</li> </ul>
<ol> <li>Why was the Greek army not able to win the fight against the Trojans?</li> </ol>	The city of Troy had high walls and strong gates.	2b 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: identify key details from faction.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text you will find the information.</li> <li>Carefully read that part of the text, considering the question.</li> <li>Give either direct quotations or paraphrase their meaning.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>3. "Build me a great wooden horse."</li> <li>Which word is "great" closest in meaning to? Tick one.</li> <li>famous</li> <li>huge</li> <li>important</li> <li>wonderful</li> </ul>	huge	2a 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text, looking for the word.</li> <li>Scanefully read the sentence containing the word, then identify a word in the question with the same meaning.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>4. Look at the paragraph beginning "No one really knew".</li> <li>Find and copy one word that tells you that Odysseus has a plan that does <i>not</i> involve climbing the walls of Troy.</li> </ul>	"trick"	2b 1 mark	Question focus: identify key details from fiction. Strategies: • Carefully read the question, marking key words. • Carefully read the paragraph indicated, considering the question.
5. Why do you think the Greek armies burnt their camps and pretended to sail away?	<ul> <li>Accept answers relating to the text. E.g.</li> <li>so the Trojans would think they had won the war</li> <li>so the Trojans would come out of their city</li> <li>so the Trojans would be off their guard</li> <li>so the Trojans would think the wooden horse was a gift</li> </ul>	2d 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: make inferences from the text.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text for the information in the question.</li> <li>Scanefully read the sentences around the information given, considering the Greek army's actions.</li> <li>Think about what you already know that might explain their actions.</li> </ul>

2d       Question focus: explain and justify inferences with evidence from the text.         1       mark         5."       Carefully read the question, marking key words.         6.       Carefully read the question, marking key words.         6.       Skim-read the text for an overall feeling about the Trojans' reactions.         7.       Scan the text, looking for evidence of the Trojans' reactions.         8.       Carefully read those parts of the text, considering the question.         9.       Remember to give direct quotations from the text.	2b     Question focus: identify key details from fiction.       2 marks     Strategies:       • Carefully read the question, marking key words.	•	<ul> <li>relevant information?</li> <li>Carefully read the relevant sections of the text to decide whether each statement is true or false.</li> </ul>	Award 2 marks for all four answers correct. Award 1 mark for three correct answers.			<ul> <li>2c Question focus: summarise main ideas from more than one paragraph.</li> <li>1 mark Strategies:</li> <li>• Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>	o 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4	2e       Question focus: predict what might happen from details stated and implied.         1       Tmark       Strategies:         • Carefully read the question, marking key words.       • Carefully read the text for an overall impression about the main ideas.         • Skim-read the text for information about Odysseus's plan.
peach" heir eyes. "		False		>	>			horse. horse into ail away.	s. orse and
nto the b believe th cheered.'		True	>			>	side the	wooden   wooden   nds to sa	e Trojans ooden ho ns.
Accept one of: • "they raced down onto the beach" • "They could hardly believe their eyes." • "'We've won!' they cheered."			The city of Troy had high walls and strong gates.	The Greeks built the wooden horse in one night.	The Greeks left the wooden horse inside the city.	The Trojans admired the horse.	Greek soldiers hide inside the	wooden horse. Greek soldiers build a wooden horse. The Trojans push the wooden horse int the city. The Greek army pretends to sail away.	<ul> <li>Fight/battle with the Trojans.</li> <li>Sneak out of the wooden horse overcome the Trojans.</li> </ul>
	the	False							
lappy wh. ling away : piece of atement.			nts to shc inside th	d a wood he wood etends to	Odysseu ijans have city?				
<ol> <li>The Trojans were happy when they saw the Greeks sailing away.</li> <li>Find and copy one piece of evidence for this statement.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Put one tick in each row of the table to show whether each statement is true or false.</li> </ol>		The city of Troy had high walls and strong gates.	The Greeks built the wooden horse in one night.	The Greeks left the wooden horse inside the city.	The Trojans admired the horse.	<ul> <li>Number these events to show what</li> <li>Odysseus planned.</li> <li>Greek soldiers hide inside the</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>wooden horse.</li> <li>Greek soldiers build a wooden horse.</li> <li>The Trojans push the wooden horse into the city.</li> <li>The Greek army pretends to sail away.</li> </ul>	<ol> <li>What do you think Odysseus plans to do when the Trojans have taken the horse into the city?</li> </ol>

#### Unit 7 FICTION

# The Enchanted Wood/The Minpins Enid Blyton/Roald Dahl

#### Key text features

The texts are both extracts from adventure stories set in fantasy woods.

- The Teaching text is from *The Enchanted Wood* (the first book of *The Magic Faraway Tree* series) by Enid Blyton.
- The Practice text is from *The Minpins* by Roald Dahl.

#### Reading the Teaching text: The Enchanted Wood

- Ask the children to think, pair, share what they know about woods and forests.
   Encourage them to use a mind map to include and link a range of ideas, including descriptive vocabulary.
- Ask the children if they have read any other books by Enid Blyton (e.g. series such as *The Famous Five, The Secret Seven* or the *Noddy* books). Explain that she wrote hundreds of children's adventure and fantasy stories during her career, many during the 1950s and 1960s.
- Access the Interactive Modelling Software for this unit. Read the extract to the children and ask them to think about why the children in the story might feel the wood is magic.
- Read the extract again, this time using the modelling software to model 'cracking' the questions together. Remember to look at the model answers and discuss strategies for different question types (pages 58–59).

#### Reading the Practice text: The Minpins

- Ask the children if they have read any other books by Roald Dahl, or seen films of his books. What do they expect of a Roald Dahl book?
- Once they have read the extract, remind the children that they are now going to work independently to practise the strategies introduced during the teaching session.

#### Moving into writing

- Reread the extracts, inviting the children to compare the woods. Which would they rather be in? Why?
- Explain to the children that they are going to write their own story set in an enchanted wood.
- In groups, ask them to create a mind map exploring different ways in which the woods might be enchanted (e.g. with monsters, talking animals, special kinds of trees and plants). They should then suggest an adventure that could happen for each enchantment.
- In pairs, ask them to agree on how the wood they are going to write about will be enchanted, and then create a story plan. Next, they should annotate their plan with words to enrich description.
- Encourage each child to talk through their story ideas with a response partner and receive feedback before writing.
- Give the children the opportunity to write their own story set in an enchanted wood.
- 56 Cracking Comprehension Year 3 Teaching and Assessment Guide © Rising Stars UK Ltd 2019



## Listening Comprehension: Questions and Answers



The listening comprehension questions can be accessed on the modelling software for this unit.

Q1:	What do the children have to cross to get into the wood?
A1:	A (narrow) ditch
Strategy:	Think about where in the text you would find the answer to this question. Listen to that part of the text again.
••••	
Q2:	Why did Joe suggest that they shouldn't go too far into the wood?
A2:	Accept answers such as:
	• This is the first time the children have been into the wood and they do not want to get lost.
Strategy:	Listen to the whole text again, thinking about why Joe made the suggestion.
••••	
Q3:	Do you think this wood would be a fun place for a picnic? Explain why.
A3:	Accept answers that relate to the story. E.g.
	• Yes. It sounds exciting./It has food (strawberries) growing in it./It feels magic./It has good places to sit down.
	• No. They do not know the wood so it might not be safe./The trees are thick so it is dark.
Strategy:	Listen to the whole text again, being alert for ideas about whether or not it would be a good place for a picnic.
Exte	nding reading
The Famo	us Five series – Enid Blyton
James an	d the Giant Peach – Roald Dahl

The Hodgeheg – Dick King-Smith

Isadora Moon Goes to the Fair – Harriet Muncaster

Dear Hound – Jill Murphy

Wood
Enchanted
The F
text:
Teaching

S
Ë
Ξ
<u> </u>
Ξ.
J.
č
Ξ.
2
σ
d)
ē
금
Ŧ
2
. T
<u> </u>
2
Ø
<u> </u>
U.

Question	Answer	CD/mark	Useful strategies
<ol> <li>"I feel as if there are adventures about,"said Joe. "Come on!" What does this quotation tell you about Joe? Choose one.</li> <li>He is scared of the woods.</li> <li>He thinks he is a hero.</li> <li>He likes adventures.</li> </ol>	He likes adventures.	2d 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: make inferences from the text.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully read the words in the question.</li> <li>Scan the text for the words in the question.</li> <li>Carefully read the sentences around the words, considering what they tell you about Joe.</li> <li>Read the options in the question and tick the one that is closest to your understanding.</li> </ul>
<ol> <li>Look at the paragraph beginning "One by one".</li> <li>Find and copy one word or group of words that tell you that the woods were not brightly lit.</li> </ol>	Accept: • "peered about" • "dim" • "Small freckles of sunshine"	2a 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the paragraph indicated, looking for a word or group of words with this meaning.</li> <li>Carefully reread the sentence containing the word(s) to check your response.</li> </ul>
<ol> <li>What made the path look as if it was made for rabbits?</li> </ol>	It was small and narrow.	2b 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: identify key details from fiction.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text for the information in the question.</li> <li>Carefully read the sentences around the information, considering the question.</li> </ul>

4	The writer describes the moss as being like " <i>a green velvet cushion</i> ". How does this make the reader feel about the moss?	Accept an answer that recognises that the moss looks: • comfortable/cosy • rich/colourful soft/springy.	2g 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: identify how meaning is enhanced through choice of words and phrases.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text, looking for the information in the question.</li> <li>Carefully read the sentences around the information, considering their impact and thinking about why the writer chose to use them</li> </ul>
ы	The children were enjoying being in the woods.       Accept any of:         the woods.       • "I can feel m         Find and copy one piece of evidence for this statement.       • "I can see so         • "Soon they w happily"	<ul> <li>Accept any of:</li> <li>"I can feel magic about somewhere"</li> <li>"their eyes shone with excitement"</li> <li>"I can see some wild strawberries!"</li> <li>"Soon they were munching away happily"</li> </ul>	2d 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: explain and justify inferences with evidence from the text.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Skim-read the text for an overall feeling about the children's experience.</li> <li>Scan the text, looking for evidence of their enjoyment.</li> <li>Carefully read the sentences around the evidence.</li> <li>Remember to give direct quotations.</li> </ul>
	Number the events to show the order in which the children did them in this extract. They went down a little green path. They had their picnic. They jumped over a ditch. They picked strawberries.	They went down a little green path. 2 They had their picnic. 4 They jumped over a ditch. 3 They picked strawberries. 3	2c 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: summarise main ideas from more than one paragraph.</li> <li>Strategies: <ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully read the events described.</li> <li>Number the events, then check your answer against the text.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

# **The Minpins**

Roald Dahl

- <sup>1</sup> Little Billy hesitated.
- <sup>2</sup> "I'm not nervous," he said. "I'm not in the least bit nervous. Not me."
- <sup>4</sup> Very, very slowly, he walked forward into the great forest. Giant trees were soon surrounding him on all sides and their branches made an almost solid roof above his head, blotting out the sky. Here and there little shafts of sunlight shone through gaps in the roof. There was not a sound anywhere. It was like being among the dead men in an enormous empty green cathedral.
- <sup>10</sup> When he had ventured some distance into the forest, Little Billy stopped and stood quite still, listening. He could hear nothing. Nothing at all. There was absolute silence.
- 13 Or was there?
- 14 Hold on just one second.
- 15 What was that?
- <sup>16</sup> Little Billy flicked his head round and stared into the everlasting gloom and doom of the forest.
- <sup>18</sup> There it was again! There was no mistaking it this time.
- <sup>19</sup> From far away, there came a faint whoozing whiffling noise, like a small gusty wind blowing through the trees.
- Then it grew louder. Every second it was growing louder, and 21 suddenly it was no longer a small wind, it was a fearsome swooshing whooshing whiffling snorting noise that sounded as though some gigantic creature was breathing heavily through its nose as it galloped towards him.
- <sup>30</sup> Little Billy turned and ran.



 ame: Class: Date	:
At the start of this extract, Little Billy was nervous.	
Explain this statement using ideas from the text. You do not have to copy words.	2
	1 m
Look at the paragraph beginning "Very, very slowly".	
What does the phrase " <i>blotting out</i> " mean? Tick <b>one</b> .	2
dimming D hiding D mopping up D spoiling D	1 m
<b>Find</b> and <b>copy one</b> word or group of words in the paragraph beginning " <i>When he had ventured</i> …" that tells you what Billy could hear.	2
	1 m
The writer describes the forest as like "being among the dead men".	1 m
The writer describes the forest as like " <i>being among the dead men</i> ". How does this make you feel about the forest?	2 1 m
How does this make you feel about the forest?	2
How does this make you feel about the forest? "Or was there?	2
How does this make you feel about the forest? "Or was there? Hold on just one second.	2
How does this make you feel about the forest? "Or was there? Hold on just one second. What was that?"	2
How does this make you feel about the forest? "Or was there? Hold on just one second. What was that?" Why does the writer use short paragraphs here? Tick <b>one</b> .	2
How does this make you feel about the forest? "Or was there? Hold on just one second. What was that?" Why does the writer use short paragraphs here? Tick one. He is trying to describe something but he doesn't know what it is.	2
How does this make you feel about the forest?         "Or was there?         Hold on just one second.         What was that?"         Why does the writer use short paragraphs here? Tick one.         He is trying to describe something but he doesn't know what it is.         He is trying to explain something that is difficult to explain.	2 1 m
How does this make you feel about the forest? "Or was there? Hold on just one second. What was that?" Why does the writer use short paragraphs here? Tick one. He is trying to describe something but he doesn't know what it is.	2
How does this make you feel about the forest?         "Or was there?         Hold on just one second.         What was that?"         Why does the writer use short paragraphs here? Tick one.         He is trying to describe something but he doesn't know what it is.         He is trying to explain something that is difficult to explain.         He is trying to give the reader information about what Billy heard.	2 1 m 2

7 Number the events to show the order in which they happened in this extract.

Little Billy turned and ran.	
Little Billy stopped and stood still.	
Little Billy walked into the great forest.	
Little Billy heard a faint noise.	

8 Put one tick in each row to show whether each statement is true or false.

	True	False
The forest was light and airy.		
The roof of the forest was high above Billy's head.		
Little Billy was enjoying his walk in the forest.		
At the end, Little Billy thought something was chasing him.		



2d

2 marks

2c

1 mark

9 Draw lines to join groups of words from the text to what they tell you.

"empty green cathedral"	Billy was surrounded by the dark.
"everlasting gloom and doom"	The sound was loud and scary.
"like a small gusty wind blowing"	Billy felt alone.
"a fearsome swooshing, whooshing, whiffling, snorting noise"	There was a quiet, breathy sound.

Practice text: The Minpins

# Cracking the questions

Ouestion	Answer	CD/Mark	Useful strateaies
<ol> <li>At the start of this extract, Little Billy was nervous.</li> <li>Explain this statement using ideas from the text. You do not have to copy words.</li> </ol>	<ul> <li>He hesitated before walking into the forest.</li> <li>The fact that he said "I'm not in the least bit nervous" to himself shows that he was.</li> <li>He was walking very, very slowly when he entered the forest.</li> </ul>	2d 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: explain and justify inferences with evidence from the text.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully read the section indicated, looking for evidence that Billy was nervous.</li> <li>Give either direct quotations or paraphrase their meaning.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Look at the paragraph beginning "Very, very slowly".</li> <li>What does the phrase "blotting out" mean? Tick one.</li> <li>dimming</li> <li>hiding</li> <li>mopping up</li> <li>spoiling</li> </ul>	hiding	2a 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully read the sentence looking for the phrase.</li> <li>Carefully read the sentence containing the phrase, then identify a word in the question with the same meaning.</li> </ul>
3. Find and copy one word or group of words in the paragraph beginning "When he had ventured …" that tells you what Billy could hear.	Accept any of: • "nothing" • "Nothing at all" • "absolute silence"	2b 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: identify key details from faction.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully read the paragraph indicated, looking for the answer.</li> <li>Remember to find and copy, not paraphrase.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>4. The writer describes the forest as like "being among the dead men". How does this make you feel about the forest?</li> </ul>	<ul><li>Accept answers that recognise it is:</li><li>scary</li><li>threatening</li><li>like being in α cemetery.</li></ul>	2g 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: identify how meaning is enhanced through choice of words and phrases.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text, looking for the words in the question.</li> <li>Carefully read the sentences around the words, considering their impact and thinking about why the writer chose to use them.</li> </ul>

<ul> <li>5. "Or was there?</li> <li>Hold on just one second.</li> <li>What was that?"</li> <li>Why does the writer use short paragraphs here? Tick one.</li> <li>He is trying to describe something but he doesn't know what it is.</li> <li>He is trying to explain something that is difficult to explain.</li> <li>He is trying to give the reader information about what Billy heard.</li> <li>He is trying to help the reader understand Billy's frightened thought the total the billy when the total thought the total the total thought the reader understand Billy's frightened thought the total thought the total thought the total thought the reader understand Billy's frightened</li> </ul>	He is trying to help the reader understand Billy's frightened thoughts.	2f 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: explain how narrative content is related and contributes to meaning as a whole.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully read the sentences around these paragraphs, considering their impact and thinking about why the writer chose to write in this way.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>6. The thing making the noise gets closer to Billy during this extract.</li> <li>Find and copy one group of words that is evidence for this statement.</li> </ul>	Accept any of: • "Then it grew louder." • "Every second it was growing louder" • "as it galloped towards him."	2d 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: explain and justify inferences with evidence from the text.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Skim-read the text for an overall feeling about the thing making the noise.</li> <li>Scan the text, looking for evidence of it coming closer.</li> <li>Remember to give direct quotations from the text.</li> </ul>
<ol> <li>Number the events to show the order in which they happened in this extract.</li> <li>Little Billy turned and ran.</li> <li>Little Billy stopped and stood still.</li> <li>Little Billy walked into the great forest.</li> <li>Little Billy heard a faint noise.</li> </ol>	Little Billy turned and ran. 4 Little Billy stopped and stood still. 2 Little Billy walked into the great forest. 1 Little Billy heard a faint noise. 3	2c 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: summarise main ideas from more than one paragraph.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Can the whole text for each of the events described.</li> <li>Number the events, then check your answer against the text.</li> </ul>

<ol> <li>Put one tick in each row to show whether each statement is true or false.</li> </ol>	:h row to sh ement is <b>tr</b>	wor ue or				2b 2 marks	Question focus: identify key details from fiction. Strategies: • Carefully read the question, marking key words.
	True	False		True	False		• Think about each of the statements separately. Consider where in the text
The forest was light and airy.			The forest was light and airy.		>		<ul> <li>you will find relevant information.</li> <li>Carefully read the relevant sections of the text to decide whether each</li> </ul>
The roof of the forest was high			The roof of the forest was high	>			Award 2 marks for all four answers correct.
above billy s nead. Little Billy was enjoying his walk in			Little Billy was enjoying his walk in the forest		>		Award I mark tor three answers correct.
At the end, Little Billy thought			At the end, Little Billy thought	>			
chasing him.			chasing him.				
<ol> <li>Draw lines to join groups of words from the text to what they tell you.</li> </ol>	groups of v hat they te	vords ell you.				2d 2 marks	Question focus: make inferences from the text. Strategies:
"empty green cathedral"	Billy was surrounde dark.	Billy was surrounded by the dark.	"empty green cathedra"	Billy was surrounde dark.	Billy was surrounded by the dark.		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text for each group of words.</li> <li>For each group, carefully read the sentence in which it appears and think</li> </ul>
"everlasting gloom and doom"	The sound was loud and scary.	d was scary.	"everlasting gloom X	The s loud	The sound was loud and scary.		<ul> <li>about what you are being told.</li> <li>Carefully read the options in the question again, linking the words with</li> </ul>
"like a small gusty wind blowing"	Billy felt alone.	alone.	"like a small gusty wind blowing"	Billy 1	Billy felt alone.		uneur meaning. Award 2 marks for all four answers correct.
"a fearsome swooshing, whiffling, snorting noise"	There was a qu breathy sound.	There was a quiet, breathy sound.	"a fearsome swooshing, whoffling, snorting noise"	breat	There was a quiet, breathy sound.		Award 1 mark for two answers correct.

#### Unit 8 NON-FICTION

# Mountains/Coasts Ruth Thomson

#### Key text features

The texts describe different landscape features.

- The Teaching text is from *Mountains* by Ruth Thomson.
- The Practice text is from *Coasts*, also by Ruth Thomson.

#### Reading the Teaching text: Mountains

- Introduce the text by asking what the children know about mountains. Make a mind map together to record their knowledge.
- Ask the children to generate questions about mountains that they hope the text will answer.
- Access the Interactive Modelling Software for this unit. Read the extract aloud.
- Once you have read the text, return to your questions to see which have been answered, at least to some degree. Talk about other texts – both in print and online – you might need to find to answer the other questions.
- Read the extract again, this time using the modelling software to model 'cracking' the questions together. Remember to look at the model answers and discuss strategies for different question types (see pages 68–69).

#### Reading the Practice text: Coasts

- Introduce the text and make another mind map to record the children's prior knowledge. Read the headings aloud to the children and ask them to generate questions to be answered by the text.
- Once they have read the text, remind the children that they are now going to work independently to practise the strategies introduced during the teaching session.

#### Moving into writing

- Ask the children what they know about rivers. On a mind map, write headings from the two texts and ask the children what information about rivers would be useful to record against each heading.
- Give the children opportunities to research more about rivers, particularly considering the headings you have recorded.
- Before they write their own texts about rivers, reread one of the texts here to help the children to find language structures and a 'voice' for their text.



## Listening Comprehension: Questions and Answers



The listening comprehension questions can be accessed on the modelling software for this unit.

Q1:	What is a mountain, according to the text?
A1:	"a very high hill" with steep and rocky sides (paragraph 1)
Strategy:	Decide where in the text you will find the information. Listen carefully to that part of the text.
••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
Q2:	What is the difference between the air at the top and the bottom of a mountain?
A2:	At the top, the air is clearer and it is "cold and windy" (paragraph 2).
Strategy:	Decide where in the text you will find the information. Listen carefully to that part of the text.
••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
Q3:	Why is information about volcanoes included in the text?
A3:	Some mountains are volcanoes.
Strategy:	Listen carefully to the part of the text that refers to volcanoes, while considering the question.

#### Extending reading

*What's Where in the World* – Dorling Kindersley

Let's Explore ... Mountain – Lonely Planet Kids

First Encyclopedia of Seas and Oceans - Jane Chisholm

itains
Moun
text:
Teaching

Cracking the questions

Ŋ	Question	Answer	CD/Mark	Useful strategies
- · ·	Suggest a heading for the first paragraph of text. Write the meaning this text gives for "mountain range".	<ul> <li>What is a mountain?</li> <li>Mountain</li> <li>Mountain</li> <li>a group of mountains (that can "stretch for hundreds of miles")</li> </ul>	2f 1 mark 2b 2 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: identify how information is related and contributes to meaning as a whole.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Strategies: <ul> <li>Carefully read the first paragraph and consider what its main purpose is.</li> <li>Look at other headings. What is their function? How do they relate to the information that follows them?</li> <li>Write a heading that captures the idea of the information.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Question focus: retrieve and record information.</li> </ul>
m	Draw a simple diagram of a volcano using information from the text. Label the crater and lava.	Accept a simple diagram copied from the text. The crater and lava should be labelled. Other features may be included: plates/crust/ rock/magma/liquid rock.	2f 2 marks	<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer.</li> <li>Scan the paragraph to look for information to include.</li> <li><i>Question focus: identify how information is related and contributes to meaning as a whole.</i></li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer.</li> </ul>
	"The plates fit together like jigsaw pieces." (paragraph 4) Why do you think the writer included this information? Choose <b>one</b> . because she has a jigsaw showing the Earth's plates because the Earth's plates are a jigsaw because she is trying to help readers to imagine what the plates are like because the Earth's crust is broken into nlates	because she is trying to help readers to imagine what the plates are like	2g 1 mark	<ul> <li>Award 1 mark for a simple diagram and 1 mark for accurate labels.</li> <li>Award 1 mark for a simple diagram and 1 mark for accurate labels.</li> <li>Question focus: identify how meaning is enhanced through choice of words and phrases.</li> <li>Strategies: <ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for information.</li> <li>Scan the text for the quotation in the question.</li> <li>Think about how the author's choice of words helps you to understand what she is trying to say.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

<ul> <li>Question focus: summarise main ideas from more than one paragraph.</li> <li>Strategies: <ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Cansider where in the text the answer will be.</li> <li>Scan that part of the text, looking for the answer.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Question focus: give the meaning of words in context.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words. Read and remember the options.</li> <li>Consider where in the text the answer will be.</li> <li>Scan that part of the text, looking for the words.</li> <li>Consider why the author chose these words.</li> <li>Reread the options in the question and choose the best one.</li> </ul>
2c 1 mark	2a 1 mark
(b) Lava cools/hardens into rock.	They come out suddenly and powerfully.
<ol> <li>Complete this list of events using information from the text: How a mountain is formed from a volcano:         <ul> <li>(a) Magma erupts through a crack in the Earth's crust.</li> <li>(b)</li> <li>(c) Layers of rock form a cone-shaped mountain.</li> </ul> </li> </ol>	<ul> <li>6. "Dust and smoke, and hot rocks called lava, burst into the air." (paragraph 7) In this sentence, "burst" is closest in meaning to which option? Choose one.</li> <li>They trickle slowly.</li> <li>They are red, like balloons.</li> <li>They come out gradually and gently.</li> <li>They come out suddenly and powerfully.</li> </ul>

### Coasts

Ruth Thomson

A coast is a place where the sea meets the land. In some places, the coast is a sloping beach. In other places, the land ends with high walls of rock. These are called cliffs.

#### 4 Rock cliffs

Wind, rain and waves change the shape of the coast all the time. Crashing waves slowly make the bottom of rocky cliffs crumble. Waves wear away soft rock, making holes. These become caves or arches.

#### 9 Sand and dunes

Over millions of years, waves wear soft rocks into tiny grains of sand. Some sandy beaches are made of crushed sea shells.

Some coasts are always windy. The wind dries the sand and blows it behind the beach. The sand piles up into soft hills called dunes. Marram grass is planted on sand dunes. Its long roots hold the sand in place.

#### 16 Sea birds and animals

Many sea birds nest and rest together on the ledges of rocky cliffs. Here, they and their eggs are safe from hungry rats, snakes and larger birds.

20 Seals and turtles are both born on beaches. They swim out to sea soon after they are born. Seals come back on land to rest. They lie in groups on rocks and sandbanks.

#### 23 Harbours and ports

Before there were aeroplanes, people travelled across seas by ship. They landed at harbours in deep, sheltered bays, where their ships were safe from rough waves.

<sup>27</sup> Today, ships mainly carry heavy goods. These travel in metal containers. The containers are loaded and unloaded at big ports.

#### 29 **Protecting coasts**

Some people use the sea as a dustbin. This is dangerous for sea life. The waste often washes up onto the shore. Most waste is plastic. It can float for thousands of miles before reaching land.

<sup>33</sup> People must look after coasts, so that these are not spoiled forever.

ar	ne:			Cl	ass:	۵	Date:
S	uggest a heading for the first paragraph	of text.	•				
V	Vrite the meaning this text gives for the v	word "co	oast".				
ι	Draw a simple diagram of a sand dune sing information from the text. Label he sand dune and marram grass.						
c	L) Do you think wind or waves would be r	nore lik	ely to change	e the shape	of the coast	t?	
Ŀ	) Explain why.						
"	waves wear soft rocks into tiny grains of s	sand."					
٧	Vhat does " <i>wear</i> " suggest about the proc	ess? Tio	ck <b>one</b> .				
Т	he rocks wear water, like clothes.		Waves sm	ash the rock	ζ.		
٧	Vaves slowly grind the rock.		The rocks	wear sand, l	ike clothes.		
(	Complete this list of events explaining how	w a bea	ach is formed	using inform	mation from	the t	ext.
- T	he wind dries the sand and blows it behi	nd the l	beach.				
Т	he sand piles up into soft hills called dun	ies.					
Ν	Aarram grass is planted on sand dunes. It	ts long i	roots hold the	e sand in plo	ace.		
	Vhich reason is given in the text for the fo han people?	act that	t ships today	mainly carr	y heavy goo	ods, rat	ther
	Some people use the sea as a dustbin." (p	paragra	ıph 9)				
٧	Vhy do you think the writer used the word	d " <i>dustl</i>	bin"? Tick <b>on</b>	e.			
b	ecause the sea is full of rubbish						
t	o show that some people don't think abo	out wha	at they throw	away and t	he harm it c	loes	
t	o show that the sea is really a dustbin						
t	o show that it is OK to throw rubbish into	the sec	a				
٧	Vhich part of the text tells you about whe	ere peo	ple decided t	o build harb	oours?		
-							

S
Ļ
S
Б.
Ä
.9
$\mathbf{O}$
· · ·
- <b>C</b>
Ð
Ļ
<b>(</b> )
<b>O</b>
<b>U</b>
-
<u> </u>
σ
<u> </u>
Δ

ä
<u>0</u>
Ę
S
Ð
Б
<u> </u>
<u>e</u>
<u> </u>
-
σ
č
÷E
×
2
õ
5

Ø	Question	Answer	CD/Mark	Useful strategies
	. Suggest a heading for the first paragraph of text.	<ul> <li>What is a coast?</li> <li>What a coast is</li> <li>Coasts</li> </ul>	2f 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: identify how information is related and contributes to meaning as a whole.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the first paragraph and consider what its main purpose is.</li> <li>Look at other headings. What is their function? How do they relate to the information that follows them?</li> </ul>
Ń	Write the meaning this text gives for the word "coast".	"a place where the sea meets the land" (paragraph 1)	2b 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: retrieve and record information.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer.</li> <li>Carefully read the paragraph.</li> </ul>
'n	Draw a simple diagram of a sand dune using information from the text. Label the sand dune and marram grass.	Accept a simple diagram of a sand dune with labels for the sand dune and marram grass.	2f 2 marks	<ul> <li>Question focus: identify how information is related and contributes to meaning as a whole.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answers.</li> <li>Carefully read the information, relating it to the diagram.</li> <li>Draw a simple diagram and write the labels.</li> </ul>
τ̈́	<ul> <li>(a) Do you think wind or waves would be more likely to change the shape of the coast?</li> <li>(b) Explain why.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Accept either answer as long as it is supported by an explanation.</li> <li>Wind</li> <li>The wind blows dry sand into dunes.</li> <li>The wind blows the sand about.</li> <li>Waves</li> <li>The waves wear away at the soft rocks of cliffs, to form caves and arches.</li> <li>The waves make rocky cliffs crumble.</li> </ul>	2h 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: make comparisons within the text.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer.</li> <li>Skim-read the relevant paragraphs to get an idea of what the text says.</li> <li>Consider the answer to (a).</li> <li>Carefully read the relevant part of the text to help you answer (b).</li> <li>Award 1 mark for a suitable explanation.</li> </ul>
vi 🗌 🗍	<ul> <li>"waves wear soft rocks into tiny grains of sand."</li> <li>What does "wear" suggest about the process? Tick one.</li> <li>The rocks are covered in water, like wearing clothes.</li> <li>Waves smash the rocks.</li> <li>Waves slowly grind the rocks.</li> <li>The rocks are covered in sand, like wearing clothes.</li> </ul>	Waves slowly grind the rock.	2a 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words. Read and remember the options.</li> <li>Consider where in the text the answer will be.</li> <li>Reread the options in the question and choose the best one.</li> <li>Scan that part of the text, looking for the words.</li> <li>Consider why the author chose these words.</li> </ul>

ents Maves wear soft rocks into tiny grains of sand. 2c Question focus: summarise main ideas from more than one paragraph. h is formed the text. d and blows and blows d on sand d on sand d the sand d on sand	the text for     There are aeroplanes that carry people.     2b     Question focus: retrieve and record information.       ay mainly     are than     1 mark     Etrategies:       are than     • Carefully read the question, marking key words.       are than     • Consider where in the text to look for the answer.       • Carefully read that part of the text.	sea as a los how that some people don't think about       29       Question focus: identify how meaning is enhanced through choice of words and phrases.         in what they throw away and the harm it does writer used through throw away and the harm it does it and phrases.       1 mark       Question focus: identify how meaning is enhanced through choice of words and phrases.         is k one.       is cone.       in and phrases.       Strategies:         is don't throw away       is cone due to the text to look for the answer.       is consider where in the text to look for the answer.         is don't throw away       is cone due this part of the text, considering the writer's viewpoint.       is cone due throw answer.	tells you under the heading 'Harbours and ports' 2f Question focus: identify how information is related and contributes to meaning cided to (lines 24–26) 1 mark 5trategies: • Carefully read the question, marking key words.
<ul> <li>6. Complete this list of events</li> <li>6. Complete this list of events</li> <li>explaining how a beach is formed</li> <li>using information from the text.</li> <li>The wind dries the sand and blows</li> <li>it behind the beach.</li> <li>The sand piles up into soft hills</li> <li>called dunes.</li> <li>Marram grass is planted on sand</li> <li>dunes. Its long roots hold the sand</li> <li>in place.</li> </ul>	<ol> <li>What reason is given in the text for the fact that ships today mainly carry heavy goods, rather than people?</li> </ol>	<ul> <li>8. "Some people use the sea as a dustbin." (paragraph 9)</li> <li>Why do you think the writer used the word "dustbin"? Tick one.</li> <li>because the sea is full of rubbish to show that some people don't think about what they throw away and the harm it does</li> <li>it os show that the sea is really a dustbin</li> <li>it os show that is OK to throw rubbish into the sea</li> </ul>	<ol> <li>Which part of the text tells you about where people decided to build harbours?</li> </ol>

### Unit 9 NON-FICTION

### From Spawn to Frog Kate Ruttle

### Key text features

Both texts are from From Spawn to Frog by Kate Ruttle.

- The Teaching text explains how the frogs lay their eggs.
- The Practice text explains how the spawn develops into a tadpole and finally a frog.

### Reading the Teaching and Practice texts: From Spawn to Frog

- Introduce the text by showing the accompanying cover illustration and asking the children whether they think this is a fiction or a non-fiction text. Discuss their responses.
- Explain that it is an explanation, following the growth from egg to frog.
- Access the Interactive Modelling Software for this unit. Read the text aloud and look for features of explanation texts: its purpose is to explain how something happens; it is written in the present tense; it contains connectives of time and sequencing (e.g. *soon, eventually, while*).
- Read the extract again, this time using the modelling software to model 'cracking' the questions together. Remember to look at the model answers and discuss strategies for different question types (see pages 76–77).
- Once they have read the Practice text, remind the children that they are now going to work independently to practise the strategies introduced during the teaching session.

- Reread both texts.
- Ask the children to draw a flow diagram that shows what happens from egg to frog. Point out the use of the headings in this process.
- Ask the children to research another life cycle (e.g. insect, bird) and to draw a flow diagram to show how the creature develops.
- Reread these texts and revisit features of explanations.
- Ask the children to use their flow diagrams to write their own explanatory texts.





The listening comprehension questions can be accessed on the modelling software for this unit.

Q1:	Where do you find frogspawn?
A1:	In water or wet places
Strategy:	Consider where in the text the information might be found. Listen carefully to that part. Make a note of words used in the text.
••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
Q2:	How are the eggs protected? Find two ways.
A2:	"slippery mass of eggs" (paragraph 2)/"jellylike covering" (paragraph 3).
Strategy:	Consider where in the text the information might be found. Listen carefully to that part. Make a note of words used in the text.
••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
Q3:	What does the embryo use for food while it grows?
A3:	" <i>the yolk</i> " (paragraph 5)
Strategy:	Consider where in the text the information might be found. Listen carefully to that part. Make a note of words used in the text.

### Extending reading

Wild Things! Penguin in the Post – Lisa Regan

Dogs (A Pet's Life) – Anita Ganeri

Nibble's Guide to Caring for Your Hamster – Anita Ganeri

Frog
<b>t</b>
Spawn
From
) text:
aching
Teg

Question	Answer	CD/Mark	Useful strategies
1. What is frog spawn?	"[A floating] clump of eggs" (paragraph 1)	2b	Question focus: retrieve and record information.
		1 mark	Strategies:
			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer.</li> <li>Carefully read the paragraph.</li> </ul>
2. From the first section, find and	<ul> <li>"clump" (paragraph 1)</li> </ul>	2α	Question focus: give the meaning of words in context.
copy a word that tells you that	• <i>"mass"</i> (paragraph 1)	1 mark	Strategies:
the eggs are together and not			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
separate.			<ul> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer.</li> </ul>
			<ul> <li>Scan the paragraph for words describing the eggs.</li> </ul>
3. Why do eggs that are laid in a	• A big ball of eggs is too large to be eaten.	2b	Question focus: retrieve and record information.
big ball have a better chance of	<ul> <li>It is a form of protection.</li> </ul>	1 mark	Strategies:
growing into trogs?			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
			<ul> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer.</li> </ul>
			• Carefully read that paragraph, considering the question.
4. Choose the best heading for the	Frogspawn	2c	Question focus: summarise main ideas from more than one paragraph.
first three paragraphs.		1 mark	Strategies:
Jelly babies     Cells			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully repeat the opening three parameters of the text</li> </ul>
Froaspawn			<ul> <li>Decide what the main idea of this part of the text is.</li> </ul>
			<ul> <li>Reread the proposed headings. Tick the one that best summarises the</li> </ul>
			content of these paragraphs and is in the style of other headings.

76 Cracking Comprehension Year 3 Teaching and Assessment Guide © Rising Stars UK Ltd 2019

Question focus: give the meaning of words in context.         Strategies:         Carefully read the question, marking key words.         • Carefully read the question, marking key words.         • Scan the paragraph for the words in the question.         • Read the answer choices given.         • Decide which one is closest in meaning.	ark       Question focus: explain how meaning is enhanced through choice of words and phrases.         ark       Strategies:         • Carefully read the question, marking key words.         • Skim-read the whole text while considering the question.         • Remember to give a reason for your decision. Base the reason on the text.
There are lots of connected cells. 2a 1 mark	<ul> <li>They are the most accurate words to use.</li> <li>The writer is teaching the reader the correct 1 mark words.</li> <li>It is so that the reader knows what the words mean.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>5. "The mass of cells in the egg is called an embryo." In this sentence, the word "mass" is closest in meaning to which option? Choose one.</li> <li>a mess</li> <li>There are lots of cells.</li> <li>There are lots of connected cells.</li> </ul>	<ol> <li>The writer uses some less familiar words such as "cell" (paragraph 3) and "embryo" (paragraph 5). Why do you think the writer uses these words?</li> </ol>

### **From Spawn to Frog**

### 1 The tadpole

Then the embryo leaves its jelly shell and attaches itself to a weed in the water. It is now a tadpole – a baby frog. The tadpoles are too small to swim away from this weed, which is now their food as well as their home. They grow until they are big enough and strong enough to break free from the weed and swim in the water. They eat other weeds and small plants called algae.

### 8 The tadpole begins to change

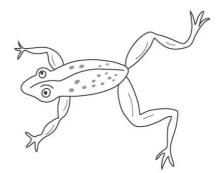
After about five weeks, the tadpole begins to change. It starts to grow hind legs. Behind its head, bulges appear where its front legs are growing. Its tail becomes smaller. Lungs begin to develop, preparing the frog for its life on land. Now and then, the tadpole wiggles to the surface to breathe in air. It eats plants, frogs' eggs and other tadpoles.

### 15 Almost there

Over time, the tadpole becomes even more frog-like. It sheds its skin and lips. Its mouth widens, and it loses its horny jaws. The tail becomes much smaller, and the legs grow. The lungs are almost functioning at this point.

### 20 The frog

Eleven weeks after the egg was laid, a fully developed frog with lungs, legs, and no tail emerges from the water. To start with, it is very tiny, and is called a froglet. This froglet will live mostly on land, with occasional swims. The tiny froglet begins to eat insects and worms. Eventually, it grows and becomes a big frog. It will find a mate. The female lays the eggs and the whole process begins again.



ame:	Class:	Date:
What does the text say a baby frog is called?		2b
From the first section, <b>find</b> and <b>copy</b> a word that describes I the weed.	how the tiny tadpole fir	1 mar
<b>Find</b> and <b>copy two</b> things that the text says the tadpole ea	its.	1 mar
Tick the best heading for the first three paragraphs. Tick <b>on</b>	ie.	1 mar
The embryo 🗌 Tadpoles 🗌		2c
What tadpoles eat 🗌 How frogs grow 🗌		1 mar
Write numbers to show the order in which this text describe	es how tadpoles begin to	o change.
tail shrinks Iungs develop		2c
back legs grow 🦳 front legs grow 🦳		1 mar
		1 mai
"Almost there" (paragraph 3). What is the function of this	heading?	i mar
	heading?	2f
	heading?	
"Almost there" (paragraph 3). What is the function of this		2f
"Almost there" (paragraph 3). What is the function of this "The lungs are almost functioning at this point." (paragraph	n 3)	2f 1 mar
"Almost there" (paragraph 3). What is the function of this "The lungs are almost functioning at this point." (paragraph In this sentence, the word "functioning" is closest in meaning	n 3)	2f
"Almost there" (paragraph 3). What is the function of this "The lungs are almost functioning at this point." (paragraph In this sentence, the word "functioning" is closest in meanin running unumber of the watching unumber of the sentence of the watching unumber of the sentence of the s	n 3)	2f 1 mar 1 mar 1 mar
"Almost there" (paragraph 3). What is the function of this ""The lungs are almost functioning at this point." (paragraph In this sentence, the word "functioning" is closest in meanir running  watching  solid	n 3) ng to which option? Tick	2f 1 mar
"Almost there" (paragraph 3). What is the function of this "The lungs are almost functioning at this point." (paragraph In this sentence, the word "functioning" is closest in meanin running unumber of the watching unumber of the sentence of the watching unumber of the sentence of the s	n 3) ng to which option? Tick	2f 1 mar 4 <b>one.</b>
"Almost there" (paragraph 3). What is the function of this ""The lungs are almost functioning at this point." (paragraph In this sentence, the word "functioning" is closest in meanir running  watching  solid	n 3) ng to which option? Tick	2f 1 mar 3 <b>one.</b> 2a 1 mar
"Almost there" (paragraph 3). What is the function of this "The lungs are almost functioning at this point." (paragraph In this sentence, the word "functioning" is closest in meanin running watching watching watching List two ways from the text that frogs are different from tag	n 3) ng to which option? Tick	2f 1 mar 3 <b>one.</b> 2a  1 mar
"Almost there" (paragraph 3). What is the function of this "The lungs are almost functioning at this point." (paragraph In this sentence, the word "functioning" is closest in meaning running watching solid s	n 3) ng to which option? Tick	2f 1 mar 3 <b>one.</b> 2a 1 mar
"Almost there" (paragraph 3). What is the function of this " "The lungs are almost functioning at this point." (paragraph In this sentence, the word "functioning" is closest in meanir running watching solid sol	n 3) ng to which option? Tick	2f 1 mar 3 <b>one.</b> 2a 1 mar
"Almost there" (paragraph 3). What is the function of this " "The lungs are almost functioning at this point." (paragraph In this sentence, the word "functioning" is closest in meanin running understand watching understand solid solid understand solid understan	n 3) ng to which option? Tick dpoles.	2f 1 mar 3 <b>one.</b> 2a 1 mar
"Almost there" (paragraph 3). What is the function of this " "The lungs are almost functioning at this point." (paragraph In this sentence, the word "functioning" is closest in meanir running watching solid sol	n 3) ng to which option? Tick dpoles.	2f 1 mar 3 <b>one.</b> 2a 1 mar

Frog
to
Spawn
From
text:
Practice

S
C
Ξ
. <u> </u>
÷
S
Ð
5
0
Ð
Ĩ
Ŧ
σ
•
÷
<u> </u>
D
<u>,                                    </u>
U

	-	2		-
ð	Question	Answer	CD/Mark	Useful strategies
-	es the text say a baby frog	"tadpole" (also accept "froglet")	2b	Question focus: retrieve and record information.
	is called?		1 mark	Strategies:
				<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer.</li> <li>Carefully read the paragraph.</li> </ul>
'n.	From the first section, <b>find</b> and	"attaches"	2α	Question focus: give the meaning of words in context.
	the	Also accept "food" or "home".	1 mark	Strategies:
	tiny tadpole first uses the weed.			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer.</li> </ul>
m.	Find and copy two things that the	Accept any two of:	2b	Question focus: retrieve and record information.
	text says the tadpole eats.	<ul> <li>"other weeds"</li> </ul>	1 mark	Strategies:
		<ul> <li>"small plants"</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>"other tadpoles"</li> <li>""</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer.</li> </ul>
		• algae		<ul> <li>Carefully read that part of the text.</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>"frogs' eggs"</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Use ideas in the text, not general knowledge.</li> </ul>
				Award 1 mark for two correct answers.
4.	•	Tadpoles	2c	Question focus: summarise main ideas from more than one paragraph.
	three paragraphs. Tick <b>one</b> .		1 mark	Strategies:
	The embryo			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
	What tadpoles eat			<ul> <li>Carefully reread the opening three paragraphs of the text.</li> </ul>
	Tadpoles			Decide what the main idea of this part of the text is about.
	How frogs grow			<ul> <li>Reread the proposed headings. Lick the one that best summarises the content of these paragraphs.</li> </ul>
<u>ю</u>	Write numbers to show the order		2c	Question focus: summarise main ideas from more than one paragraph.
	in which this text describes how		1 mark	Strategies:
	tadpoles begin to change.			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
	tail shrinks	3 tail shrinks		<ul> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer.</li> </ul>
	] back legs grow	1 back legs grow		<ul> <li>Carefully read that part of the text.</li> </ul>
	] lungs develop	4 lungs develop		Award 2 marks for all correct.
	front legs grow	2 front legs grow		Award 1 mark if two events are correctly sequenced.
ľ			_	

80 Cracking Comprehension Year 3 Teaching and Assessment Guide © Rising Stars UK Ltd 2019

<ol> <li>"Almost there" (paragraph 3). What is the function of this heading?</li> </ol>	<ul> <li>It introduces the information in the following paragraph.</li> <li>It tells you it is nearly the end of the transformation process.</li> </ul>	2f 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: explain how information is related and contributes to meaning as a whole.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Identify where the heading is in the text.</li> <li>Consider its function.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>7. "The lungs are almost functioning at this point." (paragraph 3)</li> <li>In this sentence, the word "functioning" is closest in meaning to which option? Tick one.</li> <li>running watching working solid</li> </ul>	working	2a 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: give the meaning of words in context.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider the meaning of the word and then of all the other words in the question.</li> <li>Choose the word whose meaning is closest to the underlined word.</li> </ul>
<ol> <li>List two ways from the text that frogs are different from tadpoles.</li> </ol>	Accept any <b>two</b> of: • Frogs have lungs/legs/no tail. • Frogs live on land. • Frogs eat insects and worms. • Frogs lays eggs.	2b 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: retrieve and record information.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text the answer will be.</li> <li>Scan that part of the text, looking for the answer.</li> <li>Remember to use ideas from the text, not general knowledge.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>9. Tick two sentences that you might find in a text like this.</li> <li>Freddy the frog hopped happily across the lily pad.</li> <li>A tadpole breathes through gills in the side of its head.</li> <li>If you lick a frog every morning before breakfast, the day can only get better.</li> <li>Day 74: One of the froglets left the pond today.</li> <li>Tadpoles swim by wiggling their tails.</li> </ul>	Tadpoles swim by wiggling their tails. A tadpole breathes through gills in the side of its head.	2g 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: explain how meaning is enhanced through choice of words and phrases.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Skim-read the whole text while considering the question.</li> </ul>

### Unit 10 NON-FICTION

### The World/The United Kingdom Kate Ruttle

### Key text features

Both of the texts are non-chronological report information texts linked to the geography curriculum.

- The Teaching text is about the world.
- The Practice text is about the United Kingdom.

### Reading the Teaching text: The World

- Introduce the text by asking the children what they remember about continents and oceans.
- Talk about the title of the text. What do they think it will be about?
- Access the Interactive Modelling Software for this unit. Read the text aloud and ask the children if they think their predictions were accurate.
- Read the extract again, this time using the modelling software to model 'cracking' the questions together. Remember to look at the model answers and discuss strategies for different question types (see pages 84–85).

### Reading the Practice text: The United Kingdom

- Introduce the text by asking the children what they remember about the UK.
- Once they have read the text, remind the children that they are now going to work independently to practise the strategies introduced during the teaching session.

- Give each group of children a different country to study and ask them to work in pairs to find out interesting things about their country. Focus on countries which are linked, or which can provide a contrasting location, to your current geography focus.
- Ask each pair to explain what they found out to their group.
- Revisit one of the model texts and discuss its layout.
- Ask the children to organise information under headings and to talk through a text.
- Alternatively, let each group create a presentation using features of your IWB, PowerPoint or any software presentation package. Ask each child to contribute to a page and to orally deliver part of the presentation.





The listening comprehension questions can be accessed on the modelling software for this unit.

Q1:	What does this text say a sea is?
A1:	Parts of the oceans which are near to land
Strategy:	Listen carefully for the word " <i>sea</i> ". Think about the information you are given immediately after you first hear the word
••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
Q2:	Which are the two coldest oceans?
A2:	The Arctic Ocean and the Southern Ocean
Strategy:	Listen to the part of the text under the heading " <i>Oceans</i> ". You might want to jot down the names you hear.
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
Q3:	Why do you think this text has a glossary?
A3:	To explain the meaning of some of the words people may not know and understand
Strategy:	Listen to the whole text, considering the question. Think about what you already know about glossaries. Does that help you to answer the question?

### Extending reading

Great Britain (Looking at Countries) – Jillian Powell

The United Kingdom (Popcorn: Countries) – Alice Harman

The Travel Book - Lonely Planet Kids

National Geographic Kids World Atlas – National Geographic

World
The
text:
eaching .
Ĕ

Question	Answer	CD/Mark	Useful strategies
<ol> <li>Which continent is not separated into lots of different countries?</li> </ol>	Antarctica	2b 1 mark	<ul><li>Question focus: identify key details from non-fiction</li><li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li><li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer.</li></ul>
			• Carefully read the paragraph to find your answer.
2. "the Arctic is made entirely of ice."	completely	2α	Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context.
Which word has the same meaning as " <i>entirely</i> " in this sentence? Choose <b>one</b> .		1 mark	<ul><li>Strategies:</li><li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li><li>Consider where in the text to look for the words.</li></ul>
<ul> <li>completely</li> <li>partly</li> <li>thoroughly</li> </ul>			<ul> <li>Scan the text to find the sentence in the question.</li> <li>Carefully read that part of the text, thinking about what the word might mean in this sentence.</li> </ul>
_		-	
<ol> <li>(a) Which of the lines drawn on the globe do you think represents the equator? Choose one.</li> </ol>	(a) c	2d 1 mark	Question focus: make inferences from the text. • Carefully read the question, marking key words.
ے م ا			<ul> <li>Consider where in the text to rook for the unswer. Do not just use your existing general knowledge. Check in this text.</li> <li>Carefully read the paragraph to find the information you need.</li> </ul>
(b) Find and copy a fact from the	(b) a line across the middle of the world/a line	2b	Question focus: identify key details from non-fiction
text which tells you how to find the equator.	around the fattest part of the globe	1 mark	<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Find the words in this text (not from general knowledge) that tell you where the equator is.</li> </ul>
4. Why do you think it might be hard to find water to drink all year round		2d 1 mark	Question focus: make inferences from the text Strategies:
in some countries near the equator?	water to drink during those months.		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for information.</li> <li>Carefully read that part of the text, thinking about the question and looking for information that may be relevant.</li> </ul>

84 Cracking Comprehension Year 3 Teaching and Assessment Guide © Rising Stars UK Ltd 2019

<ul> <li>Question focus: identify key details from non-fiction.</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer. Do not just use your existing general knowledge. Check in this text.</li> <li>Carefully read the paragraph to find the information you need.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Question focus: identify key details from non-faction.</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the information about each sentence separately. Use the headings. Do not just use your existing general knowledge. Check in this text.</li> <li>Carefully read the paragraph to find the information you need. Award 2 marks for all correct.</li> </ul>
2b 1 mark	2b 2 marks
pring,	ш н ц н
equator – wet season, dry season North Pole – winter and summer South Pole – winter and summer between the equator and the poles – spring, summer, autumn, winter	Antarctica is not separated into countries because it is very small. The Arctic is not a continent because there is no land under the ice. You know when you are close to the equator because you can see it. The South Pole is so cold because it is a long way from the equator.
<ol> <li>Match the climate with the place on the globe.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Choose which of the following facts are true and which are false (see right).</li> </ol>

### **The United Kingdom**

1 The United Kingdom is also called the UK and it is made up of four different **countries**: England, Northern Ireland, Scotland and Wales. Southern Ireland is a different country. Each of the countries in the UK has many of its own **laws**, made by its own **parliament**, but they also share some of their laws.

### 8 Capital cities

Each of the four countries has its own capital **city** which is where its **parliament** is. London is the capital city in England, Edinburgh is the capital of Scotland, Belfast is the capital of Northern Ireland and Cardiff is the Welsh



capital city. London is the capital city for the UK because that is where the UK parliament makes the shared laws as well as the English laws.

### 16 Language

The English language is spoken throughout the UK and all of the laws in each of the countries are written in English. However, even in England, not everyone speaks English. Many people in Cornwall, in the south-west of England, speak an old language called Cornish. Some people in Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland also speak languages that were spoken in those countries before English became the main language. Many people in Wales speak the Welsh language, and it is taught in Welsh schools for those who only speak English. Away from the big cities, in the north of Scotland and in the mountains and the islands, people often speak the old Scottish language called Gaelic. Scottish Gaelic is different from the Irish Gaelic which is still spoken in parts of Northern Ireland, although more people in Northern Ireland speak Irish.

### 29 Countryside

Although there are cities in all of the countries in the UK, there is also a lot of countryside. All the countries have areas with hills and mountains, and they all have **forests**, farming land, rivers and **coasts**. They all have areas of countryside which are very beautiful.

### 34 Weather

All of the countries in the UK have the same four seasons: spring, summer, autumn and winter, but the countries have slightly different weather. Scotland is further north than England, so it is usually a bit colder and the Scottish cities and mountains have more snow in winter than the English, Welsh and Northern Irish cities and mountains. Wales and Northern Ireland are in the west of the UK and those places usually have more rain than places in the east of the UK.

he biggest city in a country the place where the queen lives   why is London the capital city of the UK?   Do you think most of the people who speak Gaelic in Scotland live in big cities? des No	ne:		Class:	Date:
the name of a country the city where the parliament is   he biggest city in a country the place where the queen lives   Why is London the capital city of the UK?   Yo you think most of the people who speak Gaelic in Scotland live in big cities? Yes Yes Yes Yes No Yes Yes Yes No Yes Yes No Yes Yes Yes No Yes Yes Yes Yes No Yes Yes Yes Yes No Yes <	Vhich countries are part of the Un	nited Kingdom?		
whe biggest city in a country the place where the queen lives   Why is London the capital city of the UK?   Oo you think most of the people who speak Gaelic in Scotland live in big cities? The people who speak Gaelic in Scotland live in big cities? The people who speak Gaelic in Scotland live in big cities? The people who speak Gaelic in Scotland live in big cities? The people who speak Gaelic in Scotland live in big cities? The people who speak Gaelic in Scotland live in big cities? The people who speak Gaelic in Scotland live in big cities? The people who speak Gaelic in Scotland live in big cities? The people who speak Gaelic in Scotland live in big cities? The people who speak Gaelic in Scotland live in big cities? The people who speak Gaelic in Scotland Big is the country. The people who speak Gaelic in Scotland Scotland Biglish Scotland English Scotland English Scotland is usually a bit colder. Cotland has four seasons. Scotland is usually a bit colder. Cotland is further north. Scotland has more rain. Write a fact from the text about the weather of places in the west of the UK. The people woo things that you can see in the countryside of all the countries in the UK. The people woo file table to show whether the fact is true or false. All laws are the same in all parts of the UK. Cardiff is Welsh for 'Capital City'.	Nhat does the word " <i>capital</i> " tell y	you in the phrase "capital city"?	? Tick <b>one</b> .	
Why is London the capital city of the UK?         Do you think most of the people who speak Gaelic in Scotland live in big cities?         les       No         case       No         xplain your answer using ideas from this text.         Draw lines to match the languages spoken with the country.         isaelic and English         Wales         rish and English         Scotland         tornish and English         No         Its and English         Scotland         tornish and English         No         Its and English         Scotland         tornish and English         Scotland different from the weather in England.         tow is the weather in Scotland different from the weather in England.         tow is the weather north.       Scotland is usually a bit colder.         cotland has four seasons.       Scotland has more rain.         Cotland is further north.       Scotland has more rain.         Vrite a fact from the text about the weather of places in the west of the UK.         tind and copy two things that you can see in the countryside of all the countries in the UK.         tu one tick in each row of the table to show whether the fact is true or false.         All laws are the same in all parts of the UK.       Image: Cardiff is We	he name of a country	] the city where the p	arliament is 🗌	
Why is London the capital city of the UK?         Do you think most of the people who speak Gaelic in Scotland live in big cities?         les       No         case       No         xplain your answer using ideas from this text.         Draw lines to match the languages spoken with the country.         isaelic and English         Wales         rish and English         Scotland         tornish and English         No         Its and English         Scotland         tornish and English         No         Its and English         Scotland         tornish and English         Scotland different from the weather in England.         tow is the weather in Scotland different from the weather in England.         tow is the weather north.       Scotland is usually a bit colder.         cotland has four seasons.       Scotland has more rain.         Cotland is further north.       Scotland has more rain.         Vrite a fact from the text about the weather of places in the west of the UK.         tind and copy two things that you can see in the countryside of all the countries in the UK.         tu one tick in each row of the table to show whether the fact is true or false.         All laws are the same in all parts of the UK.       Image: Cardiff is We	he biggest city in a country	the place where the	queen lives	
es No   xplain your answer using ideas from this text.   Praw lines to match the languages spoken with the country. iacelic and English Scotland Cornish and English Scotland Cornish and English Northern Ireland Velsh and English England How is the weather in Scotland different from the weather in England, Northern Ireland Index State of the UK. Cotland has four seasons. Scotland is usually a bit colder. Cotland is further north. Scotland has more rain. Vrite a fact from the text about the weather of places in the west of the UK. Index and copy two things that you can see in the countryside of all the countries in the UK. Index are the same in all parts of the UK. Cardiff is Welsh for 'Capital City'.				
xplain your answer using ideas from this text.   A praw lines to match the languages spoken with the country. Sidelic and English Soctland Soctland Soctland Soctland Soctland Soctland Velsh and English England Velsh and English Soctland different from the weather in England, Northern Ireland Ind Wales? Tick one. Cotland has four seasons. Soctland is usually a bit colder. Cotland is further north. Soctland has more rain. Vrite a fact from the text about the weather of places in the west of the UK. To me tick in each row of the table to show whether the fact is true or false. True False All laws are the same in all parts of the UK.	Do you think most of the people w	/ho speak Gaelic in Scotland liv	e in big cities?	
iaelic and English Wales rish and English Scotland Cornish and English Scotland Velsh and English England Northern Ireland Now is the weather in Scotland different from the weather in England, Northern Ireland Now is the weather in Scotland different from the weather in England, Northern Ireland Now is the weather in Scotland different from the weather in England, Northern Ireland Now is the weather north. Scotland is usually a bit colder. Cotland is further north. Scotland has more rain. Vrite a fact from the text about the weather of places in the west of the UK. Tind and copy two things that you can see in the countryside of all the countries in the UK. The tick in each row of the table to show whether the fact is true or false.    True False   All laws are the same in all parts of the UK.   Cardiff is Welsh for 'Capital City'.		om this text.		
rish and English Scotland Cornish and English Northern Ireland Cornish and English England Now is the weather in Scotland different from the weather in England, Northern Ireland Now is the weather in Scotland different from the weather in England, Northern Ireland Now is the weather in Scotland different from the weather in England, Northern Ireland Now is the weather one. Cotland has four seasons. Scotland is usually a bit colder. Cotland is further north. Scotland has more rain. Vrite a fact from the text about the weather of places in the west of the UK. Time and copy two things that you can see in the countryside of all the countries in the UK. Tut one tick in each row of the table to show whether the fact is true or false.           True         False           All laws are the same in all parts of the UK.         Image: Country in the image: Country	Draw lines to match the languages	s spoken with the country.		
Cornish and English Northern Ireland   Cornish and English England     Velsh and English England     Iow is the weather in Scotland different from the weather in England, Northern Ireland   Iow is the weather in Scotland different from the weather in England, Northern Ireland   Iow is the weather in Scotland different from the weather in England, Northern Ireland   Iow is the weather in Scotland different from the weather in England, Northern Ireland   Ind Wales? Tick one.   Icotland has four seasons.   Icotland is usually a bit colder.   Icotland is further north.   Icotland has more rain.   Icotland and copy two things that you can see in the countryside of all the countries in the UK.   Icotland is true or false.   Icotland is each row of the table to show whether the fact is true or false.     Icotland is welsh for 'Capital City'.   Icotland Icotland Icotland   Icotland Icotland Icotland	Gaelic and English	Wales		
Velsh and English England   Welsh and English England Iow is the weather in Scotland different from the weather in England, Northern Ireland and Wales? Tick one. Icotland has four seasons. Scotland is usually a bit colder. Icotland is further north. Scotland has more rain. Vrite a fact from the text about the weather of places in the west of the UK. I'ind and copy two things that you can see in the countryside of all the countries in the UK. I'ut one tick in each row of the table to show whether the fact is true or false. Intervent the same in all parts of the UK. I'ut one tick in each for 'Capital City'.	rish and English	Scotland		
Item is the weather in Scotland different from the weather in England, Northern Ireland and Wales? Tick one.         Item is four seasons.       Scotland is usually a bit colder.         Item is further north.       Scotland has more rain.         Item is four the text about the weather of places in the west of the UK.         Item is the text about the weather of places in the west of the UK.         Item is the text about the text about the countryside of all the countries in the UK.         Item is the text is the text about the text about the text about the text about the country is a fact is true or false.         Item is the text in each row of the table to show whether the fact is true or false.         All laws are the same in all parts of the UK.         Cardiff is Welsh for 'Capital City'.	Cornish and English	Northern Ire	eland	
and Wales? Tick one.   cotland has four seasons.   Scotland is usually a bit colder.   cotland is further north.   Scotland has more rain.   Vrite a fact from the text about the weather of places in the west of the UK.   Find and copy two things that you can see in the countryside of all the countries in the UK. True tick in each row of the table to show whether the fact is true or false. All laws are the same in all parts of the UK. Cardiff is Welsh for 'Capital City'.	Velsh and English	England		
cotland is further north. Scotland has more rain.   Vrite a fact from the text about the weather of places in the west of the UK. Find and copy two things that you can see in the countryside of all the countries in the UK. The tick in each row of the table to show whether the fact is true or false.   Image: True False   All laws are the same in all parts of the UK.	low is the weather in Scotland dif and Wales? Tick <b>one</b> .	fferent from the weather in Eng	gland, Northern Ir	eland
Vrite a fact from the text about the weather of places in the west of the UK.  Find and copy two things that you can see in the countryside of all the countries in the UK.  Fut one tick in each row of the table to show whether the fact is true or false.  True False All laws are the same in all parts of the UK.  Cardiff is Welsh for 'Capital City'.	Scotland has four seasons.	Scotland is usually (	a bit colder.	
Find and copy two things that you can see in the countryside of all the countries in the UK.         Put one tick in each row of the table to show whether the fact is true or false.         Image: True False         All laws are the same in all parts of the UK.         Cardiff is Welsh for 'Capital City'.	Scotland is further north.	Scotland has more re	ain.	
Put one tick in each row of the table to show whether the fact is true or false.          True       False         All laws are the same in all parts of the UK.	Vrite a fact from the text about th	ne weather of places in the wes	st of the UK.	
TrueFalseAll laws are the same in all parts of the UK	ind and copy two things that you	u can see in the countryside of	all the countries ir	n the UK.
All laws are the same in all parts of the UK.	out <b>one</b> tick in each row of the tab	le to show whether the fact is t	<b>true</b> or <b>false</b> .	
Cardiff is Welsh for 'Capital City'.		Tru	ue False	
	All laws are the same in all parts	of the UK.		
Some people in Scotland speak Gaelic.	Cardiff is Welsh for 'Capital City'.			
	Some people in Scotland speak G	Gaelic.		

S
Ξ
<u> </u>
Ξ.
5
ăi
¥
Б
Ð
2
Ŧ
σ
·=
<b>×</b>
U
d
1
()
$\mathbf{\nabla}$

## Practice text: The United Kingdom

Question	Answer	<b>LU/Mark</b>	Userui strategies
1. Which countries are part of the	England, Scotland, Wales, Northern Ireland	2b	Question focus: identify key details from non-fiction.
United Kingdom?	(Do NOT accept Ireland)	1 mark	Strategies:
			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer.</li> <li>Carefully read the paragraph to find your answer.</li> </ul>
2. What does the word "capital" tell	It is the city where parliament is	2α	Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context.
you in the phrase "capital city"?		1 mark	Strategies:
ICK ONE.			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
the name of a country			<ul> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the words.</li> </ul>
The city where the parliament is			<ul> <li>Scan the text to find the phrase in the question.</li> </ul>
the biggest city in α country			<ul> <li>Carefully read that part of the text, thinking about what the word might</li> </ul>
the place where the queen lives			mean in this phrase.
3. Why is London the capital city of	<ul> <li>It is where the UK parliament is.</li> </ul>	2b	Question focus: identify key details from non-fiction.
the UK?	• It is where the shared laws are made.	1 mark	Strategies:
			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer. Use the headings.</li> <li>Carefully read the paragraph to find your answer.</li> </ul>
4. Do you think most of the people	No	2d	Question focus: make inferences from the text.
(Gaelic in Scotland live in	<ul> <li>It says Gaelic is spoken "away from the big</li> </ul>	1 mark	Strategies:
	cities".		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>It says in the mountains and the islands and those are not in big cities</li> </ul>		• Consider where in the text to look for information. Use the headings.
Explain your answer using laeas from this text.	(Do not award the mark for 'No' unless the reason given is based on the text.)		<ul> <li>cateruly read that part of the text, thinking about the question and looking for information that may be relevant.</li> </ul>

88 Cracking Comprehension Year 3 Teaching and Assessment Guide © Rising Stars UK Ltd 2019

ы	Draw lines to match the languages spoken with the country.	8		2b 2	2b 2 marks	Question focus: identify information. Stratenies
	Gaelic and English Wales	Gaelic and English	Wales		21101	<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
			Scotland	pt		<ul> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer. Use the headings.</li> </ul>
	Cornish and English Northern Ireland	Cornish and English	Northern Ireland	ern I		<ul> <li>Calefully read the paragraph to find your answer.</li> <li>Award 2 marks for all correct</li> </ul>
	Welsh and English England	Welsh and English	England	q		Award 1 mark for two correct.
Ö		Scotland is usually a bit colder.	der.	2h		Question focus: make comparisons within the text.
	different from the weather in			1	1 mark	Strategies:
	England, Northern Ireland and Wales? Tick <b>one</b> .					• Carefully read the question, marking key words. Note this question begins
						<ul> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer. Use the headings.</li> <li>Carefully read the paragraph to find your answer.</li> </ul>
7.		They usually have more rain than	n than places in the	in the 2b		Question focus: retrieve and record information.
	the weather of places in the west	east of the UK.		1	1 mark	Strategies:
	of the UK.					<ul> <li>Carefully read the guestion, marking key words.</li> </ul>
						<ul> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer. Use the headings.</li> <li>Carefully read the paragraph to find voir answer.</li> </ul>
ø	Find and copy two things that you	u Accept any two of:		2b		Ouestion focus: retrieve and record information.
						C. T.
	call see in the country yarde of an th countries in the LIK	•	tarming land,		1 mark	Strategies:
		and coasts.				Carefully read the question, marking key words.
						<ul> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer. Use the nearings.</li> <li>Carefully read the paragraph to find your answer.</li> </ul>
9.				2b		Question focus: identify key details from non-fiction.
	table to show whether the fact is <b>true</b> or <b>false</b> .			1	1 mark	Strategies:
	True False	0	True False			<ul> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the information about each sentence</li> </ul>
◄	All laws are the same	All laws are the same	>			separately. Use the headings. Do not just use your existing general knowledge Check in this text
.=	in all parts of the UK.	in all parts of the UK.				<ul> <li>Carefully read the paragraph to find the information you need.</li> </ul>
	Cardiff is Welsh for	Cardiff is Welsh for	>			Award 2 marks for all answers correct
·-	'Capital City'.	Capital City.				Award 1 mark for two correct answers.
S	Some people in	Some people in	>			
S	Scotland speak Gaelic.	Scotland speak Gaelic.				
S	Scottish cities usually	Scottish cities usually	>			
>	have more snow than Walch rities	have more snow than				
<b>&gt;</b>						

### Unit 11 NON-FICTION

### Emergency Vehicles – Firefighters/Emergency Vehicles – Police Chris Oxlade

### Key text features

The texts are information report texts about emergency vehicles.

• The Teaching text and the Practice text are both from is from *Ten Fire Engines and Emergency Vehicles* by Chris Oxlade.

### Reading the Teaching text: Emergency Vehicles – Firefighters

- Ask the children to think, pair, share what they know about fire engines and machines that are used to fight fires. Record the children's ideas on a mind map.
- Talk about fire safety. What can they do to prevent starting a fire and what should they do if they witness a fire?
- Discuss the difficulties and dangers of the role of firefighters (e.g. inaccessible fires, burns, smoke inhalation). Ask the children if they know any machines or equipment firefighters can use to help to overcome these difficulties and dangers.
- Access the Interactive Modelling Software for this unit. Read the extract to the children and ask them to compare what they already knew with the information in the extract.
- Read the extract again, this time using the modelling software to model 'cracking' the questions together. Remember to look at the model answers and discuss strategies for different question types (see pages 92–93).

### Reading the Practice text: Emergency Vehicles - Police

- Discuss the types of vehicles and equipment police officers use. Explore the reasons why police officers need different kinds of vehicles and equipment.
- Once they have read the extract, remind the children that they are now going to work independently to practise the strategies introduced during the teaching session.

- Reread both texts.
- Explain to the children that they are going to write a similar text about other emergency vehicles (e.g. ambulances, coastguard helicopters, airport fire engines, army emergency vehicles).
- Together, discuss what might be important in an emergency vehicle (e.g. speed of response, durability, controllability, safety for the operators).
- In groups, ask the children to design their own emergency vehicle, thinking about different jobs you might want it to perform and the features you identified together.
- In pairs, ask the children to draw and label their vehicle, adding notes of useful features.
- Encourage each child to tell a response partner what they plan to write and receive feedback before writing.
- Give the children the opportunity to write their own emergency vehicle text.





The listening comprehension questions can be accessed on the modelling software for this unit.

Q1:	Why does the Rosenbauer Raptor need stabilisers?
A1:	So it doesn't topple over
Strategy:	Think about where in the text you would find the answer to this question. Listen to that part of the text again.
••••	
Q2:	Why might it be important that the <i>DOK-ING MVF-5</i> is very tough?
A2:	It can go into dangerous situations./It might run over a mine.
Strategy:	Think about where in the text you would find the answer to this question. Listen to that part of the text again.
••••	
Q3:	When might the operators of the <i>DOK-ING MVF-5</i> use the gripper?
A3:	If something needs to be grabbed and dragged away from danger
Strategy:	Think about where in the text you would find the answer to this question. Listen to that part of the text again.

### Extending reading

Supercars – Rob Coulson Cars, Trains, Ships and Planes: A Visual Encyclopedia of Every Vehicle – Dorling Kindersley The Big Book of Things That Go – Dorling Kindersley Outdoor Maker Lab – Robert Winston My Book of Bike Activities – Catherine Bruzzone On Your Bike – Sir Chris Hoy

– Firefighters
Vehicles
ext: Emergency <sup>v</sup>
ت
Teaching .

:	4		
Question	Answer	CD/Mark	Usetul strategies
1. Look at the first paragraph.	pull	2α	Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context.
What does the word " <i>pluck</i> " mean?		1 mark	Strategies:
Choose <b>one</b> .			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
Collect			<ul> <li>Scan the paragraph indicated, looking for the word.</li> </ul>
			• Carefully read the sentence containing the word, then identify a word in the
protect			question with the same meaning.
lind			
2. Find and copy one thing	Accept either:	2b	Question focus: identify key details from non-fiction.
firefighters do in the aerial ladder	<ul> <li>"spray water" (onto a fire)</li> </ul>	1 mark	Strategies:
cage.	<ul> <li>"rescue people" (in danger)</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
			<ul> <li>Consider where in the text you will find the information.</li> </ul>
			• Carefully read that part of the text, considering the question.
3. "It takes just 60 seconds"	It is quick.	29	Question focus: identify how meaning is enhanced through choice of words
What does the word " <i>just</i> " tell you	<ul> <li>It is a surprise that it is so quick.</li> </ul>	1 mark	and phrases.
about the time it takes to raise the			Strategies:
ladder?			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
			<ul> <li>Scan the text, looking for the quotation.</li> </ul>
			<ul> <li>Carefully read the quotation in its context, thinking about what the implications of the word "inst" are</li> </ul>
1. A robot frafiohting vahirla is	Accent any of:	PC	Duestion force: evolution and institution information with evidence from the text
	weeker and on.	5	במרשנים לשרמש באמות מות למשיון וולביבורבה אונו באמרוורב לישוו נובר ובאני
sometimes better than a fire	• It is "tough enough to keep on working even 1 mark	1 mark	Strategies:
engine.	if it runs over a mine!"		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
Find and copy one piece of	• It "can push objects that weigh up to nine		<ul> <li>Skim-read the text for an overall feeling about why a robot firefighting</li> </ul>
evidence for this statement.	tonnes out of its way".		vehicle is sometimes better.
	• It "can grab and drag objects away from		<ul> <li>Scan the text, looking for reasons given.</li> </ul>
	danger'.		<ul> <li>Remember to give direct quotations from the text.</li> </ul>
	• "This mini, fireproof machine is operated by		
	remote control."		

Question focus: identify key details from non-fiction.	1 mark Strategies:	<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text you will find the information.</li> <li>Carefully read that part of the text, considering the question.</li> </ul>	Question focus: make comparisons within the text.	<ul> <li>2 mark</li> <li>5 trategies:</li> <li>• Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>• Think about each of the statements senarctely. Consider where in the text</li> </ul>	you will find relevant information.	<ul> <li>Carefully read the relevant sections of the text to decide which vehicle each statement applies to.</li> </ul>	Award 2 marks for all four answers correct.	Award 1 mark for three answers correct.
2b	1 L		2h	2 1				
the way.					~	Σ	R	Σ
It can push objects out of the way.					It has a rescue cage.	It is operated by remote control.	It is 12 metres long.	It has a gripper to drag objects from danger.
5. What does the dozer blade do?			Write 'R' if the statement is	true for the <i>Raptor</i> or 'M' if the statement is true for the <i>DOK-ING MVF-5</i> .	It has a rescue cage.	It is operated by remote control.	It is 12 metres long.	It has a gripper to drag objects from danger.

(۵)	
Ö	
lice	
olid	
0	
6	
icles	
Q	
•=	
e	
9	
en	
0	
5	
mergency	
ā	
me	

Chris Oxlade

### POLICE SUPERBIKE A POLICE SUPERBIKE is a super-fast road motorcycle. Nobody can escape a police officer riding one of these.

Superbikes are the fastest road motorcycles on the planet. They are lightweight but have hugely powerful engines,

The first RR bikes were ridden by Rubén 'Spiderman' Xaus in the 2009 Superbike World Championships for the BMW Motorrad team.

The ABS (Anti-lock Braking System) helps a rider keep control when braking at high speed or in slippery conditions.

## FACTFILE: BMW S10000RR

speed in a flash! The lightning-fast BMW S1000RR (known as

and smooth, streamlined bodies that get them up to top

the 'RR') is BMW's fastest motorcycle. It is ridden by police

traffic officers in the USA and the UK. The BMW S1000RR can

go from 0–60 kilometres per hour in 2.6 seconds!

- Length: 2 metres
- Weight: 183 kilogrammes
- **Top speed:** Over 200 kilometres per hour
  - Engine power: 193 horsepower
    - Engine size: 1 litre

## POLICE SQUAD SUPERCARS

# Some police officers are very lucky. They get to drive the fastest police cars! The luckiest of all get to drive POLICE SQUAD SUPERCARS.

Police officers sometimes need to drive fast to chase speedy suspects trying to escape. This sleek squad car is

A warning light bar sits on the police car's roof. The warning lights have super-bright blue and red LEDs.

The car's streamlined body has a smooth shape. This allows it to cut through the air at top speed.



the incredible LAMBORGHINI HURACÁN LP610-4 POLIZIA. Lamborghini – one of Italy's most famous supercar makers – gave this one-off car to the Italian police force as a gift. The Italian police force once had a Lamborghini Gallardo, but an officer crashed it into a line of parked cars! The Lamborghini Hurácan LP610-4 replaced the Gallardo.

# ACTFILE: LAMBORGHINI HURÁCAN LP610-4 POLIZI

- Length: 4.5 metres
- **Top speed:** 323 kilometres per hour
  - Engine power: 602 horsepower
    - Width: 1.9 metres
- Engine size: 5.2 litres

N	lame:	Class:	Date:
1	Look at the first paragraph. <b>Find</b> and <b>copy one</b> word that mean	ns the same as <i>very</i> .	2α
2	<b>Find</b> and <b>copy two</b> things that make the superbike so fast.		1 mark
3	" that get them to top speed in a flash!" What do the words "in a flash" help the reader to understand?		1 mark
4	Why do you think the police need to have ABS fitted on their su	uperbikes?	1 mark 2d 1 mark
5	<i>"Police officers sometimes need to drive fast"</i> <b>Find</b> and <b>copy one</b> piece of evidence for this statement.		2b
6	What happened to the Lamborghini Gallardo?		1 mark 2b
7	The text talks about " <i>superbikes</i> " and " <i>supercars</i> ". <b>a)</b> What makes these vehicles " <i>super</i> "?		1 mark
	<b>b)</b> Why do the police need them?		2g/2d
8	Tick to show whether each statement is true for the police <b>sup</b> e One statement refers to both vehicles.	erbike or supercar.	2 marks
	Bike	Car	
	It has an LED light bar.		
	It has a streamlined shape.		
	It has a top speed of over 200 kilometres per hour.		2h
	It has a top speed of over 300 kilometres per hour.		2 marks
9	Why did the author include pictures? Tick <b>one</b> .		
	to make the text look more interesting		
	to show the reader what the vehicles look like		
	to show how fast the vehicles are $\Box$		2f

– Police
Vehicles -
Emergency
text:
Practice

S
0
· —
L.
in
ai
<b>U</b>
_
Б
Ð
Ē
÷
÷-
σ
.=
-
<u> </u>
U.
d
Ξ.
$\mathbf{U}$

	:			
3	Question	Answer	CU/Mark	Userul strategies
<u>.</u>	. Look at the first paragraph.	"super"	2α	Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context.
	Find and copy one word that		1 mark	Strategies:
	means the same as <i>very.</i>			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the paragraph indicated, looking for a word that means the same as <i>very</i>.</li> <li>Carefully read the sentence containing the word, checking that this word has the same meaning as the word in the question.</li> </ul>
5.		Accept any two of:	2b	Question focus: identify key details from non-fiction.
	make the superbike so fast.	<ul> <li>"lightweight"</li> </ul>	1 mark	Strategies:
		<ul> <li>"hugely powerful engines"</li> <li>"smooth, streamlined bodies"</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully read the text, looking for the features that make the bike so fast.</li> <li>Remember to find and copy, not paraphrase.</li> </ul>
ć.	. " that get them to top speed in a flash!"	The bikes are quick.	2g 1 mark	Question focus: identify how meaning is enhanced through choice of words and phrases.
	What do the words " <i>in a flash</i> " help			Strategies:
	the reader to understand?			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text, looking for the quotation.</li> <li>Carefully read the quotation in its context, thinking about the implications of the phrase "in a flash".</li> </ul>
ŗ.		Police officers sometimes have to ride very fast	2d	Question focus: make inferences from the text.
	need to have ABS fitted on their	and need to keep control when they brake at	1 mark	Strategies:
	superbikes?	nign speed of when it is suppery.		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text, looking for information about ABS.</li> <li>Consider the implications of ABS and why police officers might need it.</li> </ul>
ъ.		"to chase speedy suspects" (trying to escape)	2b	Question focus: identify key details from non-fiction.
	anve jast		1 mark	Strategies:
	Find and copy one piece of evidence for this statement.			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text, looking for the quotation.</li> <li>Carefully read that part of the text, considering the question.</li> <li>Remember to find and copy, not paraphrase.</li> </ul>
9.		"An officer crashed it into a line of parked	2b	Question focus: identify key details from non-fiction.
	Lamborghini Gallarao?	carsi	1 mark	Strategies:
				<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text, looking for the name of the car.</li> </ul>

<ul> <li>Question focus: identify how meaning is enhanced through choice of words and phrases/make inferences from the text.</li> <li>Strategies: <ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text, looking for the word "super". Consider the impact of the word.</li> <li>Skim-read the text, thinking about why the police might need super-vehicles.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Award 1 mark for each part of the question.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Question focus: make comparisons within the text.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Think about each of the statements separately. Consider where in the text you</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Carefully read the relevant sections of the text to decide which vehicle each statement applies to.</li> <li>One of the statements applies to hoth vehicles</li> </ul>	Award 2 marks for all four answers correct.	Award 1 mark for three answers correct.		<ul> <li>Question focus: identify how information is related and contributes to meaning as a whole.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Skim-read the whole text to get an overall understanding.</li> <li>Consider how the pictures enhance the text. What additional information do they give?</li> </ul>
2g/2d 2 marks	2h 2 marks						2f 1 mark	
e e							look like	
cognise: emergencie: les to catch		ke Car	>	>		>	e vehicles	
fast. rs that re o get to o ast vehic spects.	-	Bike		ed 🗸	l of 🗸	d of ires	what the	
<ul> <li>(a) They are very fast.</li> <li>(b) Accept answers that recognise: <ul> <li>Police need to get to emergencies quickly.</li> <li>Police need fast vehicles to catch criminals/suspects.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>			It has an LED light bar.	It has a streamlined shape.	It has a top speed of over 200 kilometres per hour.	It has a top speed of over 300 kilometres per hour.	to show the reader what the vehicles look like	
	ice	Car						es are out the
ut " <i>superb</i> nese vehic ilice need	ner each or the pol r <b>car</b> . One both veh	Bike					r include ok more	· what the he vehicle ation abo
<ol> <li>The text talks about "superbikes" and "supercars".</li> <li>(a) What makes these vehicles "super"?</li> <li>(b) Why do the police need them?</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Tick to show whether each statement is true for the police superbike or supercar. One statement refers to both vehicles.</li> </ol>		It has an LED light bar.	It has a streamlined shape.	It has a top speed of over 200 kilometres per hour.	It has a top speed of over 300 kilometres per hour.	<ul> <li>9. Why did the author include pictures?</li> <li>Tick one.</li> <li>To make the text look more</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>interesting</li> <li>to show the reader what the vehicles look like</li> <li>to show how fast the vehicles are</li> <li>to give new information about the vehicles</li> </ul>

### Unit 12 NON-FICTION

### Cornish Holiday Blog/ Ken's Summer Holidays on the Isle of Mull – Day 3 Kate Ruttle

### Key text features

Both texts are recount texts, written as holiday blogs.

- The Teaching text is Cornish Holiday Blog by Kate Ruttle.
- The Practice text is Ken's Summer Holidays on the Isle of Mull Day 3 by Kate Ruttle.

### Reading the Teaching text: Cornish Holiday Blog

- Talk about blogs. Explain or clarify that they are generally set up by individual people or small
  groups to share their ideas, opinions and experiences. Some people use them as diaries.
- Show the children a map of the UK and identify Cornwall and Newquay on the southern coast of England.
- Ask if any of the children have ever been on holiday in Cornwall. Encourage them to share their experiences. Ask the children to predict what kinds of activities people might do on the Cornish coast in summer.
- Access the Interactive Modelling Software for this unit. Read the extract to the children and ask them to compare the activities they predicted with those mentioned in the blog. Were their predictions correct?
- Read the extract again, this time using the modelling software to model 'cracking' the questions together. Remember to look at the model answers and discuss strategies for different question types (see pages 100–101).

### Reading the Practice text: Ken's Summer Holidays on the Isle of Mull – Day 3

- Show the children a map of the UK and identify the Isle of Mull off the west coast of Scotland. Ask the children to predict what kind of wildlife they might see there. What other activities might people do?
- Once they have read the extract, remind the children that they are now going to work independently to practise the strategies introduced during the teaching session.

- Reread both texts, exploring the style of language used and personal opinions given in the blog.
- Explain to the children that they are going to write their own blog entry about an experience they have had.
- Demonstrate planning a blog, listing key events to include and noting down some ideas for vocabulary before asking the children to plan their own blog.
- Ideally, the children should create and edit their blog by word-processing. Encourage them to work with a response partner to improve their work.
- If possible, publish the children's blogs on your class/school website.





The listening comprehension questions can be accessed on the modelling software for this unit.

Q1:	Give <b>two</b> reasons why the family came to Cornwall.
A1:	To see dolphins and to go surfing
Strategy:	Think about where in the text you would find the answer to this question. Listen to that part of the text again.
••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
Q2:	What do you think an "ocean safari" is?
A2:	A trip out to sea to look at wildlife
Strategy:	Think about where in the text you would find the answer to this question. Listen to that part of the text again.
••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
Q3:	What do you think the writer will remember most from the ocean safari?
A3:	Seeing the dolphins jumping, diving and playing
Strategy:	Listen to the whole text again, thinking about the most memorable events.

### Extending reading

Travel blogs such National Geographic for Kids (www.natgeokids.com)

The Travel Book - Lonely Planet

I Spy at the Seaside – Collins

A Whale of a Tale – Bonnie Worth

Ocean: A Children's Encyclopedia – Dorling Kindersley

Teaching text: Cornish Holiday Blog 🧔	iday Blog 📵		Cracking the questions
Question	Answer	CD/Mark	Useful strategies
<ol> <li>Look at the first paragraph.</li> <li>Find and copy a word that means the same as well-known.</li> </ol>	"famous"	2a 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully read the paragraph indicated, looking for a word with the same meaning as that given in the question.</li> </ul>
<ol> <li>Why did the writer keep her fingers crossed?</li> </ol>	She wanted to see dolphins.	2b 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: identify key details from non-fiction.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text you will find the information.</li> <li>Carefully read that part of the text, considering the question.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>3. "No sooner had we left the harbour than we could see shapes swimming in the sea." What did the writer use the words "no sooner than" to show? Choose one.</li> <li>The dolphins were near the boat when they boarded it.</li> <li>They did not see anything when they were in the harbour.</li> <li>They saw the dolphins early in their trip.</li> <li>It took a long while before they saw the dolphins.</li> </ul>	They saw the dolphins early in their trip.	2g 1 mark	<ul> <li>Question focus: identify how meaning is enhanced through choice of words and phrases.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text, looking for the sentence in the question.</li> <li>Garefully read the nearby sentences, considering the impact of the words "no sooner than" and thinking about why the writer chose to use them.</li> </ul>

<ul> <li>2d Question focus: make inferences from the text.</li> <li>1 mark Strategies:</li> <li>• Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>• Consider where in the text you will find this information.</li> <li>• Carefully read that part of the text, considering the question.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>2d Question focus: explain and justify inferences with evidence from the text.</li> <li>2 marks</li> <li>2 trategies:</li> <li>6 Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>6 Carefully read the sections you identify, looking for evidence you can quote.</li> <li>6 Remember to give direct quotations from the text.</li> <li>7 Award 1 mark for each piece of evidence quoted, up to a total of 2 marks.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>2c Question focus: summarise main ideas from more than one paragraph.</li> <li>1 mark Strategies: <ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the whole text for each of the events described.</li> <li>Number the events, then check your answer against the text.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
They were all pleased/excited to 2d see the dolphin out of the water. 1 n	<ul> <li>Accept any two of: 2d</li> <li>"but for me it was all about the dolphins" 2 π</li> <li>"I kept my fingers crossed we'd see dolphins too"</li> <li>"I wanted to see dolphins leaping and playing"</li> <li>"It was a dream come true!"</li> <li>"We had seen my dolphins."</li> </ul>	2c       catamaran     1       catamaran     1       dolphins jumping     3       ghost-like shapes     2       seals on rocks     4
<ol> <li>Why did everyone cheer when the first dolphin jumped up?</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>The writer really wanted to see dolphins.</li> <li>Find and copy two pieces of evidence for this statement.</li> </ol>	<ul> <li>6. Number these things to show the order the writer saw them.</li> <li>catamaran</li> <li>dolphins jumping</li> <li>ghost-like shapes</li> <li>seals on rocks</li> </ul>

### Ken's Summer Holidays on the Isle of Mull – Day 3

- <sup>1</sup> Today we went on a sea trip. It was awesome! We were lucky that it was a calm day so Callum didn't get seasick. Yesterday it was windy and so we probably couldn't have gone on a boat, but today the weather was perfect.
- <sup>5</sup> We left from Tobermory (the main town on the island). The boat was called *Silver Swift*. It wasn't very big but we weren't sleeping on it, so it didn't matter. We even had to bring our own picnic, although you could buy hot drinks and snacks on board. Even though it was sunny and warm, Dad made us take jumpers and kagouls because he said it would be cold out on the open sea. At first, we laughed at him, but unfortunately he was right. After an hour, both Callum and I reluctantly pulled on our jumpers. It wasn't worth being cold just to prove Dad wrong! We saw lots of seals. They did look funny, bobbing up and down in the water. When they bark, they sound like dogs. We had great fun trying to spot a new seal before anyone else in the family.
- But then someone shouted from the 17 other side of the boat. We rushed across to see what the fuss was about and saw a whale's spout. We watched it for a while as it blew water from its blowhole, then it dived back under the water. A real live whale! We thought that was it ... but suddenly it leaped. Someone said it was a minke (say min-key) whale. They say that minke whales are small whales but I'll tell you that when it jumped, it didn't look small!!! It made a huge splash as it belly-flopped back into the water. It was so close that we all got soaked. When we left the cottage this morning, we hoped to see seals and



Dad took this photo of the whale as it jumped!

morning, we hoped to see seals and maybe dolphins. But we saw a WHOLE WHALE!!!! BEST DAY EVER.

1       Look at the first paragraph.       20         2       Why would the family not have gone on a boat the day before?       20         3       Find and copy two things that you learned about the boat they travelled on.       20         4       Why were the boys reluctant to put their jumpers on?       20         5       "It made a huge splash as it belly-flopped back into the water."       20         Ken could have said it landed. Why did he use the word "belly-flopped"?       1         Tick one.       1       1         1       helps the reader to understand what he saw.       1         People splash when they do belly-flops.       20       20         1       ment       20       1         6       Ken enjoyed the day.       1       1         Find and copy two pieces of evidence for this statement.       20       20         2       1       1       20       20         1       1       20       1       1         1       helps the reader to understand what he saw.       1       1         1       helps on they do belly-flops.       1       1         6       Ken enjoyed the day.       1       1       1         7       Fill in the gaps in this sentence.	١	Name:	Class:	Date:
Pind and copy one word that means the same as good.   2   Why would the family not have gone on a boat the day before?   3   3   Find and copy two things that you learned about the boat they travelled on.   4   4   Why were the boys reluctant to put their jumpers on?   5   7   7   Find and copy two pieces of evidence for this statement.   20   21   22   24   1   1   1   5   7   Fill in the gaps in this sentence.   The family hoped to see   but instead they saw   2   7   Fill in the gaps in this sentence.   The family hoped to see   but instead they saw   8   Why does ken use capital letters at the end of his blog?   2   7   Number these things to show the order in which Ken saw them.   whale blowing water	1	Look at the first paragraph.		
2       Why would the family not have gone on a boat the day before? <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup> Inerk          3       Find and copy two things that you learned about the boat they travelled on. <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup> Inerk          4       Why were the boys reluctant to put their jumpers on? <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup> Inerk          5       "It made a huge splash as it belly-flopped back into the water." <sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup> Inerk          6       "It helps the reader to understand what he saw.          [         People splash when they do belly-flopps.          [         People splash when they do belly-flopps.         9       Find and copy two pieces of evidence for this statement.          [         Paillin the gaps in this sentence.         The family hoped to see          [         Inerk           2 <sup>n</sup> [         Inerk          8       Why does Ken use capital letters at the end of his blog?          2 <sup>n</sup> [         [         2 <sup>n</sup> [         [         [		Find and copy one word that means the same as good.		2a
3       Find and copy two things that you learned about the boat they travelled on.       20         4       Why were the boys reluctant to put their jumpers on?       21         5       "It made a huge splash as it belly-flopped back into the water."       21         Ken could have said it landed. Why did he use the word "belly-flopped"?       1         Tick one.       1         It helps the reader to understand what he saw.       1         People splash when they do belly-flops.       1         Belly-flops are painful, so the whale must have been hurt.       1         The reader needs to know the whale landed on its belly.       1         6       Ken enjoyed the day.         Find and copy two pieces of evidence for this statement.       20         Imak       21         9       Number these things to show the order in which Ken saw them.       21         whale jumping       Silver Swift       2         2       whale blowing water       2	2	Why would the family not have gone on a boat the day befor	re?	2b
4       Why were the boys reluctant to put their jumpers on?       2d Imark         5       "It made a huge splash as it belly-flopped back into the water." Ken could have said it landed. Why did he use the word "belly-flopped"? Tick one.       2g Imark         1       thelps the reader to understand what he saw.	3	<b>Find</b> and <b>copy two</b> things that you learned about the boat th	hey travelled on.	
5 "It made a huge splash as it belly-flopped back into the water."   Ken could have said it landed. Why did he use the word "belly-flopped"?   Tick one.   It helps the reader to understand what he saw.   People splash when they do belly-flops.   Belly-flops are painful, so the whale must have been hurt.   The reader needs to know the whale landed on its belly.   6   Ken enjoyed the day.   Find and copy two pieces of evidence for this statement.   2h   2marks   7   Fill in the gaps in this sentence.   The family hoped to see   but instead they saw   8   Why does Ken use capital letters at the end of his blog?   2f   2mark   9   Number these things to show the order in which Ken saw them.   whale jumping   Silver Swift   seals bobbing	4	Why were the boys reluctant to put their jumpers on?		2d
Tick one.   It helps the reader to understand what he saw.   People splash when they do belly-flops.   Belly-flops are painful, so the whale must have been hurt.   The reader needs to know the whale landed on its belly.   6 Ken enjoyed the day.   Find and copy two pieces of evidence for this statement.	5	"It made a huge splash as it belly-flopped back into the wate	r."	
It helps the reader to understand what he saw		Ken could have said it landed. Why did he use the word "belly	y-flopped"?	
People splash when they do belly-flops.   Belly-flops are painful, so the whale must have been hurt.   The reader needs to know the whale landed on its belly.   6   Ken enjoyed the day.   Find and copy two pieces of evidence for this statement.		Tick <b>one.</b>		
Belly-flops are painful, so the whale must have been hurt				
Belly-flops are painful, so the whale must have been hurt.   The reader needs to know the whale landed on its belly. 1   The reader needs to know the whale landed on its belly. 1   Ken enjoyed the day. 1   Find and copy two pieces of evidence for this statement. 2b   Zmarks 2   Fill in the gaps in this sentence. 2b   The family hoped to see 2b   but instead they saw 1   Mydoes Ken use capital letters at the end of his blog? 2f   Zmark 2   Number these things to show the order in which Ken saw them.   whale jumping Silver Swift   seals bobbing whale blowing water				2g
<ul> <li>6 Ken enjoyed the day.</li> <li>Find and copy two pieces of evidence for this statement.</li> <li>2b</li> <li>2b</li> <li>2c</li> <li>2c</li> <li>2c</li> </ul>				
Find and copy two pieces of evidence for this statement.     2b   2b   2   2   7   Fill in the gaps in this sentence.   The family hoped to see   but instead they saw   1   mark   8   Why does Ken use capital letters at the end of his blog?   2f   2   2   2   mark     9   Number these things to show the order in which Ken saw them.   whale jumping   Silver Swift   seals bobbing     2c				1 mark
2b   2 marks      7 Fill in the gaps in this sentence.   The family hoped to see	6	Ken enjoyed the day.		
7 Fill in the gaps in this sentence.   The family hoped to see 2h   but instead they saw 1mark   8 Why does Ken use capital letters at the end of his blog? 2f   9 Number these things to show the order in which Ken saw them. 2mark   whale jumping Silver Swift   seals bobbing whale blowing water		Find and copy two pieces of evidence for this statement.		Zh
The family hoped to see 2h   but instead they saw 1 mark   8 Why does Ken use capital letters at the end of his blog?   9 Number these things to show the order in which Ken saw them.   whale jumping Silver Swift   seals bobbing whale blowing water				
but instead they saw 1 mark   8 Why does Ken use capital letters at the end of his blog? 2f   9 Number these things to show the order in which Ken saw them. 2mark   9 Number these things to show the order in which Ken saw them. 2c   seals bobbing whale blowing water 1	7	Fill in the gaps in this sentence.		
<ul> <li>8 Why does Ken use capital letters at the end of his blog?</li> <li>9 Number these things to show the order in which Ken saw them. whale jumping</li></ul>		The family hoped to see		2h
<ul> <li>Why does Ken use capital letters at the end of his blog?</li> <li>9 Number these things to show the order in which Ken saw them.</li> <li>whale jumping</li></ul>		but instead they saw		1 mark
9 Number these things to show the order in which Ken saw them.     whale jumping   Silver Swift   2c     seals bobbing   whale blowing water   I	8	Why does Ken use capital letters at the end of his blog?		
seals bobbing whate blowing water	9	Number these things to show the order in which Ken saw the	em.	2 mark
seals bobbing whale blowing water		whale jumping Silver Swift		2c
		seals bobbing 🗌 whale blowing wa	ater	1 mark

Day 3
f Mull –
he Isle of
iys on th
r Holida
Summe
: Ken's :
e text
Practic

Prc	actice text: Ken's Summ	Practice text: Ken's Summer Holidays on the Isle of Mull – Day 3	– Dαy 3	Cracking the questions
ð	Question	Answer	CD/Mark	Useful strategies
-	Look at the first paragraph.	Accept either of:	2α	Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context.
	Find and copy one word that	• "awesome"	1 mark	Strategies:
	means the same as <i>good.</i>	• "perfect"		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully read the paragraph indicated, looking for a word with the same meaning as that given in the question.</li> </ul>
2.	Why would the family not have	<ul> <li>"it was windy"</li> </ul>	2b	Question focus: identify key details from non-fiction.
	gone on a boat the day before?	<ul> <li>Callum would have been seasick.</li> </ul>	1 mark	Strategies:
				<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text, looking for information about the day before.</li> <li>Carefully read the nearby sentences, looking for reasons why they couldn't have gone on a boat.</li> </ul>
м.	Find and copy two things that	Accept any two of:	2b	Question focus: identify key details from non-fiction.
	you learned about the boat they	• It was called <i>Silver Swift</i> .	1 mark	Strategies:
	traveilea on.	<ul> <li>It was not very big.</li> <li>"you could buy hot drinks and snacks on board"</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text, looking for the information about the boat.</li> <li>Remember to find and copy, not paraphrase.</li> </ul>
4.	Why were the boys reluctant to put	They didn't want Dad to be right after they	2d	Question focus: explain and justify inferences with evidence from the text.
	their jumpers on?	had laughed at him.	1 mark	Strategies:
		Also accept: They did not think it would be cold.		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text, looking for information about the boys wearing their jumpers.</li> <li>Consider the implications of them putting their jumpers on when they had laughed at Dad earlier.</li> </ul>
ъ.	"It made a huge splash as it hellv-flopped hock into the water "	It helps the reader to understand what he saw.	2g	Question focus: identify how meaning is enhanced through choice of words and and and
	Von rould have raid it landed Why			
	did he use the word "belly-flopped"?			<ul> <li>Carefully read the auestion, marking key words.</li> </ul>
	Tick one.			<ul> <li>Scan the text, looking for the sentence in the question.</li> </ul>
	It helps the reader to understand what he saw.			<ul> <li>Carefully read the nearby sentences, considering the impact of the word "belly-flopped" and thinking about why the writer chose to use it.</li> </ul>
	People splash when they do belly-flops.			
	Belly-flops are painful, so the whale must have been hurt.			
	The reader needs to know the whale landed on its belly.			

<ul> <li>Question focus: identify key details from non-fiction.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text for evidence that Ken enjoyed the day.</li> <li>Carefully read near the parts of the text you identified, considering the question.</li> <li>Remember to find and copy, not paraphrase.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Question focus: make comparisons within the text.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text for information about what the family hoped to see and what they did see.</li> <li>Carefully reread the parts of the text with the information and compare them.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Question focus: identify how information is related and contributes to meaning as a whole.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the identified section of the text looking for capital letters.</li> <li>Consider how the capital letters enhance the text: what additional information do they give?</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Question focus: summarise main ideas from more than one paragraph.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Can the whole text for each of the events described.</li> <li>Number the events, then check your answer against the text.</li> </ul>
2b 2 marks	2h 1 mark	2f 1 mark	2c 1 mark
Accept any two of: • "It was awesome!" • "We had great fun" • "BEST DAY EVER."	The family hoped to see <u>seals and dolphins</u> but instead they saw <u>seals and a whale</u> .	<ul> <li>for emphasis</li> <li>to show how excited he was</li> </ul>	whale jumping 4 seals bobbing 2 <i>Silver Swift</i> 3 whale blowing water 3
<ol> <li>Ken enjoyed the day.</li> <li>Find and copy two pieces of evidence for this statement.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>Fill in the gaps in this sentence.</li> <li>The family hoped to seebut instead they saw</li> </ol>	8. Why does Ken use capital letters at the end of his blog?	<ul> <li>9. Number these things to show the</li> <li>9. Order in which Ken saw them.</li> <li>1 whale jumping</li> <li>1 seals bobbing</li> <li>1 Silver Swift</li> <li>1 whale blowing water</li> </ul>

### Unit 13 NON-FICTION

### Rosa Parks/Mary Seacole Kate Ruttle

### Key text features

Both texts are biographical and feature black women who played an important role in history.

- The Teaching text is *Rosa Parks*, written by Kate Ruttle.
- The Practice text is Mary Seacole, written by Kate Ruttle.

### Reading the Teaching text: Rosa Parks

- Ask the children if they know anything about Rosa Parks, Martin Luther King Jr or the American civil rights movement.
- Introduce key ideas, e.g. until the 1960s, segregation meant that the best schools, houses, restaurants, cinemas, and so on, were not accessible to people who did not have white skin. Encourage the children to reflect and comment on this idea.
- Access the Interactive Modelling Software for this unit. Read the extract to the children and ask them to reflect on Rosa Parks' actions.
- Read the extract again, this time using the modelling software to model 'cracking' the questions together. Remember to look at the model answers and discuss strategies for different question types (see pages 108–109).

### Reading the Practice text: Mary Seacole

- Ask the children if they have heard of Mary Seacole or Florence Nightingale. Encourage them to share what they already know.
- Show the children a world map. Point to Crimea, Turkey and Jamaica so they have an understanding of the relative location of each country.
- Once they have read the extract, remind the children that they are now going to work independently to practise the strategies introduced during the teaching session.

- Reread the text about Mary Seacole.
- Explain to the children that they are going to write a similar text about Florence Nightingale (or another person from a period in history you are studying).
- In groups, ask the children to research Florence Nightingale: who she was, when and where she lived, and what she is remembered for. Encourage them to record notes on a mind map to organise the information they find.
- In pairs, ask the children to select the information they want to include and begin to plan their writing.
- Encourage each child to explain to a response partner what they plan to write and receive feedback before writing.
- Give the children the opportunity to write their text.





The listening comprehension questions can be accessed on the modelling software for this unit.

Q1:	Why do you think Rosa Parks did not move when she was asked to?
A1:	Accept answers relating to the text. (E.g. She was tired./She was sitting in the right place./She did not see why she should.)
Strategy:	Think about where in the text you would find the answer to this question. Listen to that part of the text again.
••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
Q2:	Why do you think some bus companies went out of business during the Montgomery bus protest?
A2:	Their customers were walking instead of taking the bus.
Strategy:	Think about where in the text you would find the answer to this question. Listen to that part of the text again.
••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
Q3:	What did Rosa Parks do to be remembered as a woman who wanted to be free and wanted other people to be free?
A3:	She did not follow the rules./She did not accept that she should give up her seat to a white man.
Strategy:	Listen to the whole text again, considering the question.

### Extending reading

Fantastically Great Women Who Changed the World - Kate Pankhurst

Mary Seacole ... and the Crimean War – Sarah Ridley

Rosa Parks – Lisbeth Kaiser

Grandad Mandela – Zindzi Mandela et al

Young, Gifted and Black – Jamia Wilson

Parks
Rosa
) text:
Teaching

Question	Answer	CD/Mark	Useful strategies
1. Look at the first paragraph.	"laws"	2α	Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context.
Find and copy one word that		1 mark	Strategies:
means the same as <i>rules</i> .			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully read the paragraph indicated, looking for a word with the same meaning as that given in the question.</li> </ul>
2. Choose one.	they had black skin.	2b	Question focus: identify key details from non-fiction.
Segregation meant that people		1 mark	Strategies:
couldn't do some things if:			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
they were too tall.			<ul> <li>Consider where in the text you will find the information. Use the section</li> </ul>
they were left-handed.			headings to help you.
they had black skin.			<ul> <li>Carefully read that part of the text, considering the question.</li> </ul>
they were female.			
3. What was the crime for which Rosa	Accept either:	2b	Question focus: identify key details from non-fiction.
Parks was arrested?	<ul> <li>not giving her seat to α white man</li> </ul>	1 mark	Strategies:
	• refusing to move when the driver asked		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
	her to		<ul> <li>Consider where in the text you will find the information. Use the section</li> </ul>
			<ul> <li>headings to help you.</li> <li>Carefully read that part of the text considering the question.</li> </ul>
4. Find and copy one thing that	Accept any of:	2b	Question focus: identify key details from non-fiction.
happened as a result of the	<ul> <li>Most African-Americans chose to walk.</li> </ul>	1 mark	Strategies:
Montgomery bus protest.	<ul> <li>Some bus companies went out of</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
	business.		<ul> <li>Consider where in the text you will find the information. Use the section</li> </ul>
	The American courts decided that black		headings.
	<ul> <li>people could sit anywhere on a bus.</li> <li>Rosa Parks moved to a new city.</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Carefully read that part of the text, considering the question.</li> </ul>

<ul> <li>Question focus: make inferences from the text.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text you will find the information. Use the section headings.</li> <li>Carefully read relevant sections, considering the question.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Question focus: summarise main ideas from more than one paragraph.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Can the whole text for each of the events described.</li> <li>Number the events, then check your answer against the text.</li> </ul>
2d 1 mark	2c 1 mark
<ul> <li>It was her action that started the Montgomery bus protest.</li> <li>She inspired people to protest at segregation.</li> </ul>	Rosa was taken to a police station. 2 Rosa refused to give her seat to a white man. 1 Rosa moved to a different city. 4 Rosa had to pay a fine. 3
<ol> <li>Why do you think Rosa Parks was blamed for the buses no longer being segregated?</li> </ol>	<ul> <li>6. Number the events in the order that they happened to Rosa Parks.</li> <li>Rosa was taken to a police station.</li> <li>Rosa refused to give her seat to a white man.</li> <li>Rosa moved to a different city.</li> <li>Rosa had to pay a fine.</li> </ul>

# **Mary Seacole**

#### 1 In Jamaica

Mary Seacole was a Jamaican nurse who lived 200 years ago. When she was a young woman, she set up a hospital in Jamaica to care for sick and wounded British soldiers.

#### 7 In Crimea

In 1854, Mary heard that there was a war in Crimea. Britain, France and Turkey were fighting against Russia. Many of her soldier friends went to fight there. Mary went too, so she could



fight there. Mary went too, so she could help to care for them.

13 Life was hard for the soldiers. It was cold and there was snow on the ground, but they had to live in tents. Everything was dirty – even the drinking water. Conditions were so bad that more soldiers died of cold and illness than in battle. At the beginning of the war, most of the hospitals were dirty and overcrowded, so it was difficult for soldiers to get better.

#### **18 Florence Nightingale**

A nurse called Florence Nightingale was sent to Crimea by the British government to look after their soldiers. She made changes to the nearest hospital so that at least it was clean and each soldier had his own bed. However, her hospital was in Turkey, so soldiers had to travel a long way by boat to get there.

#### 24 The British Hotel

Mary Seacole set up the British Hotel, close to the battlefield in Crimea, so that she could care for soldiers who were sick and injured. It was only a small wooden building, but inside it was warm and clean, and soldiers could buy hot meals and supplies. She wasn't paid by the government, so the soldiers had to pay for their own care. Mary prepared medicines for the sick and treated the wounds of the injured. She was kind to the soldiers and they called her 'Mother Seacole'. Since Mary Seacole was able to help soldiers close to the battlefield, they received treatment much faster than those who had to travel by boat and cart to hospital.

#### 34 After the War

After the Crimean War, Mary Seacole moved to live in Britain. She didn't have much money, but some of the soldiers she had cared for during the war tried to help her. They even held a big concert and gave her the money they raised from it.

ame: Class: Do	ate:
Look at the first paragraph.	
Find and copy one word that means the same as injured.	
Look at the paragraph beginning "In 1854".	
List <b>four</b> countries that were fighting in the Crimean War.	
"Conditions were so bad"	
Which word is "conditions" closest in meaning to?	
Tick <b>one</b> .	
illnesses preparation requirements environment	
Write <b>one</b> way in which Florence Nightingale improved the hospital in Crimea.	
Why do you think soldiers did not have to pay for the care at Florence Nightingale's hospital	?
Why do you think Mary Seacole set up the British Hotel close to the battlefield?	
The soldiers called her 'Mother Seacole'.	
Find and copy evidence to explain why they did this.	
Put <b>one</b> tick in each row to show whether each statement about Mary Seacole is <b>true</b> or <b>fals</b>	е.
True False	
She went to Crimea to help look after British soldiers.	
She worked in the same hospital as Florence Nightingale.	
She was paid by the British government.         She made medicines for the soldiers.	
She made medicines for the soldiers.	
Number the events to show the order that Mary Seacole did them.	
She set up the British Hotel.	
She set up a hospital in Jamaica.	
She went to live in England.	

Seacole
Mary
text:
Practice

# **Cracking the questions**

Question			
_		<b>LU/IMArk</b>	Userui strategies
1. Look at the first paragraph.	"wounded"	2α	Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context.
Find and copy one word that		1 mark	Strategies:
means the same as <i>injured</i> .			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully read the paragraph indicated, looking for a word with the same meaning as that given in the question.</li> </ul>
2. Look at the paragraph beginning	Britain, France, Turkey, Russia	2b	Question focus: identify key details from non-fiction.
"In 1854".		1 mark	Strategies:
List <b>four</b> countries that were fighting in the Crimean War.			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Carefully read the section indicated, looking for the names of four countries that were fighting.</li> </ul>
3. "Conditions were so bad"	environment	2α	Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context.
Which word is "conditions" closest		1 mark	Strategies:
in meαning to? Tick <b>one</b> .			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text indicated, looking for the word.</li> </ul>
illnesses			• Carefully read the sentence containing the word, then identify a word in
preparation			the question with the same meaning.
requirements			
environment			
4. Write <b>one</b> way in which Florence	Accept either:	2b	Question focus: identify key details from non-fiction.
Nightingale improved the hospital	<ul> <li>It was clean.</li> </ul>	1 mark	Strategies:
In Crimea.	<ul> <li>Each soldier had his own bed.</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
			<ul> <li>Consider where in the text you will find the information.</li> <li>Carefully read that part of the text, considering the question.</li> </ul>
5. Why do you think soldiers did <i>not</i>	She had been sent by the British government.	2d	Question focus: make inferences from the text.
have to pay for the care at Florence		1 mark	Strategies:
Nigrungare s nospitar:			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
			<ul> <li>Look for the section about Florence Nightingale.</li> <li>Carefully read the section, considering the question.</li> </ul>

112 Cracking Comprehension Year 3 Teaching and Assessment Guide © Rising Stars UK Ltd 2019

close to the much faster     1 mark     5       • It was a long way to travel to Florence Nightingale's hospital.     1 mark     5       • It was a long way to travel to Florence Nightingale's hospital.     2     2       • She was kind to the soldiers.     2     2       • She was kind to the soldiers.     2     2       • She was kind to the soldiers.     2     2       • She was kind to the soldiers.     2     2       • She was kind to the soldiers.     2     2       • She was kind to the soldiers.     2     2       • She was kind to the soldiers.     2     2       • To explain     • She was kind to the soldiers.     2       • to show     • She was kind to the soldiers.     2       • to show     • True     True     2       • to show     • True     2     2       • to show     • She was paid by the     *     2       • to help look after     *     *     *       • to help loo	6. Why do you think Mary Seacole	Mary Sea	cole	Accept either:			2d	Question focus: make inferences from the text.
Dottleheld?         much faster           The soldiers called her 'Mother'         • It was a long way to travel to Florence         • It was a long way to travel to Florence           Find and copy evidence to explain, why they did this.         • She prepared medicines for the sidk.         1 mark         • She treated their wounds.           Find and copy evidence to explain why they did this.         • She treated their wounds.         2d         0           Mary Seacole :         • She treated their wounds.         • She treated their wounds.         2d         0           Mary Seacole is true or false.         • She treated their wounds.         • She treated their wounds.         • A           Mary Seacole is true or false.         • She went to Crimea         • She went to Crimea         • A           Initials solders.         • Inter or false.         • A         • A           Initials solders.         • Inter or false.         • A         • A           Initials solders.         • Inter or false.         • A         • A           Initials solders.         • Inter or false.         • A         • A           Initial solders.         • Inter or false.         • A         • A           Initial solders.         • Inter or false.         • A         • A           Initial solderes.         • Introwold solders.	set up the British H	lotel close	e to the	<ul> <li>so the soldiers could re</li> </ul>	ceive tre	atment	1 mark	Strategies:
The soldiers called her 'Mother       • She was kind to the soldiers.       2d       0,         Seacole'.       • She prepared medicines for the sick.       1 mark       5r         Find and copy evidence to explain       • She prepared medicines for the sick.       1 mark       5r         why they did this.       • She prepared medicines for the sick.       1 mark       5r         why they did this.       • She prepared medicines for the sick.       1 mark       5r         Put one tick in each row to show       whether each statement about       2       0,         Mary Seacole is true or false.       True       False       2       0,         Intish soldiers.       True       False       2       2       2         Intish soldiers.       Enveloped in the       N       N       N       N         Intish soldiers.       Enveloped in the       N       N       N       N         Intish soldiers.       Enveloped in the       N       N       N       N       N         Intish soldiers.       Interestick       N       N       N       N       N       N         Intish soldiers.       Interestick       Interestick       N       N       N       N       N       N	battlefield?			much faster • It was a long way to tr Nightingale's hospital.	avel to Fi	lorence		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Skim-read the section about the British Hotel to get an overall understanding.</li> <li>Carefully read the section, considering the question.</li> </ul>
Sectore - indication in a copy evidence to explain why they did this.     1 mark is a construction of a copy evidence to explain why they did this.     5 he treated their wounds.     1 mark is a construction of a copy evidence to explain why they did this.     2 marks is a copy evidence to explain is a copy evidence to explain whether each statement about Mary Seacole is true or false.     2 marks is a copy evidence to explain is a copy evidence to explain it and the went to Crimea is true or false.     2 marks is a copy evidence to explain is a copy evidence to explain it and the went to Crimea is true or false.     2 marks is a copy evidence to explain it and the copy evidence is true or false.     2 marks is a copy evidence to copy evidence is a copy evidence is a copy and the copy evidence is a copy evidence.     2 marks is a copy evidence is a copy evidence is a copy evidence is a copy evidence is a copy evidence.     2 marks is a copy evidence is a copy evidence is a copy evidence is a copy evidence.     2 marks is a copy evidence is a copy evidence is a copy evidence is a copy evidence is a copy evidence.     2 marks is a copy evidence is a c		her 'Motl	her		Idiers.		2d	Question focus: explain and justify inferences with evidence from the text.
Find and copy evidence to explain       Distribution         why they did this.       Put one tick in each row to show         whether each statement about       Mary Seacole is true or false.         Mary Seacole is true or false.       2b         mewent to Crimea       True         finitish soldiers.       2b         finitish soldiers.       2b         finitish soldiers.       2b         finitish soldiers.       2b         fine worked in the method of the false in the worked in the method after.       2b         fine worked in the method finities soldiers.       2b         fine worked in the method finities soldiers.       2b         fine worked in the method finities soldiers.       2b         finitiesh soldiers.       2b         fine worked in the soldiers.       2b         finitiesh soldiers.       2b         fine worked in the soldiers.       2b         finitiesh soldiers.       2b	Seacole .				es ror the		1 mark	Strategies:
Put one tick in each row to show whether each statement about Mary Seacole is true or false.     2b       Mary Seacole is true or false.     2b       Mary Seacole is true or false.     2b       Mary Seacole is true or false.     2b       Ture     Ture     Ealse       he went to Crimea     1       the worked in the arme hospital     5he went to Crimea     1       infish soldiers.     5he worked in the stritish soldiers.     5he worked in the same hospital     2       infish soldiers.     5he worked in the stritish government.     1       The made medicines     1     2       Or the soldiers.     2     2       She went to live in England.     2       She set up the British Hotel.     3       She went to live in England.     4	<b>Find</b> and <b>copy</b> evic why they did this.	lence to (	explain		.cpi			
Put ome tick in each row to show whether each statement about Mary Seacole is true or false.       2b         Mary Seacole is true or false.       True       False         he went to Crimea       True       False         he went to Crimea       Image       She went to Crimea       Image         o help look after       Image       She went to Crimea       Image         o help look after       Image       Image       Image         in eworked in the       She worked in the       Image       Image         is Florence       Nightingale       Image       Image         in eworked in the       She worked in the       Image       Image         is Florence       Nightingale       Image       Image         in eworked in the       Image       Image       Image         is Florence       Nightingale       Image       Image         in eworked in the       Image       Image       Image         is florence       Nightingale       Image       Image         is florence								<ul><li>was called this.</li><li>Remember to give direct quotations from the text.</li></ul>
whether each statement about Mary Seacole is true or false.       2 marks         Mary Seacole is true or false.       True       False         he went to Crimea       True       False         o help look after       True       False         fitish soldiers.       She went to Crimea       *         he worked in the ame hospital       She went to Crimea       *         fitish soldiers.       She worked in the soldiers.       *         he worked in the ame hospital       She worked in the soldiers.       *         he worked in the ame hospital       She worked in the soldiers.       *         he worked in the ame hospital       *       *         fightingale.       Nightingale.       *         he was paid by the fitish government.       *       *         he made medicines       *       *         order that Mary Seacole did them.       *       *         She set up the British Hotel.       She set up a hospital in Jamaica.       1         She worked in Loue       *       *         She went to live in England.		row to s	how				2b	Question focus: identify key details from non-fiction.
True         False           he went to Crimea         True         False           5 he went to Crimea         5 he went to Crimea         6           5 he went to Crimea         5 he went to Crimea         7           1 titlsh soldiers.         5 he went to Crimea         7           1 titlsh soldiers.         5 he worked in the arme hospital         7           1 titlsh soldiers.         5 he worked in the arme hospital         7           1 s Florence         Nightingale.         7           1 ghtingale.         Nightingale.         7           1 he was paid by the         7         7           1 he wasoldiers.         7<	whether each state Mary Seacole is <b>tr</b> u	ement αb <b>ie</b> or <b>fals</b> e	out				2 marks	Strategies: • Carefully read the auestion marking key words
he went to Crimea <t< td=""><td></td><td>True</td><td>False</td><td></td><td></td><td>False</td><td></td><td><ul> <li>Think about each of the statements separately. Consider where in the text</li> </ul></td></t<>		True	False			False		<ul> <li>Think about each of the statements separately. Consider where in the text</li> </ul>
0 help look after       0 help look after       A         ritish soldiers.       Birtish soldiers.       A         ritish soldiers.       Birtish soldiers.       A         he worked in the       Birtish soldiers.       A         ame hospital       She worked in the       A         ame hospital       She worked in the       A         are hospital       She worked in the       A         is Florence       Nightingale.       A         Indicates       Nightingale.       A         It he was paid by the       A       A         Interval       She was paid by the       A         Interval       She was paid by the       A         Interval       She set up the British Hotel.       A         She went to live in England.       A         She travelled to Crinne	She went to Crimea			She went to Crimea	>			you will find relevant information.
ritish soldiers.       British soldiers.       British soldiers.         he worked in the make hospital ame hospital       She worked in the same hospital       Image: She worked in the same hospital         ame hospital       She worked in the self or the soldier.       Nightingale.       Image: She worked in the same hospital         ightingale.       Nightingale.       Nightingale.       Image: She worked in the self or the soldier.       Image: She worked in the self or the soldier.       Image: She worked in the self or the soldier.         he made medicines       Image: She was paid by the made medicines       Image: She worked in the soldier.       Image: She worked in the soldier.       Image: She worked in the soldier.         It he soldier.       She set up the British Hotel.       She set up the British Hotel.       She set up the British Hotel.       Image: She set up the British Hotel.       She set up the British Hotel.         She set up the British Hotel.       She set up the British Hotel.       She set up the British Hotel.       She set up the British Hotel.       She set up the British Hotel.       She set up the British Hotel.       She set up the British Hotel.       She set up the British Hotel.       She set up the British Hotel.       She set up the British Hotel.       She set up the British Hotel.       She set up the British Hotel.       She set up the British Hotel.       She set up the British Hotel.       She set up the Britel do Crined.       She set up the British Hotel.	to help look after			to help look after				<ul> <li>Cale Inity fead the relevant sections of the text to declae whether each etatement is true or false</li> </ul>
he worked in the ame hospital       She worked in the same hospital         is Florence       Nightingale.       Nightingale.       Nightingale.       She was paid by the strish government.       Nightingale.         he was paid by the iritish government.       Nightingale.       Nightingale.       She was paid by the british government.       Nightingale.         he made medicines       She was paid by the softers.       Nightingale.       She was paid by the british government.       Nightingale.         Number the events to show the order that Mary Seacole did them.       She set up the British Hotel.         She set up a hospital in Jamaica.       She set up a hospital in Jamaica.       1       She set up a hospital in Jamaica.         She travelled to Crimen       She went to live in England.       4       She travelled to Crimen       She set up a hospital in Jamaica.	British soldiers.			British soldiers.				
ame hospital       same hospital       same hospital         s Florence       s Florence       as Florence         lightingale.       Nightingale.       Nightingale.         he was paid by the       Nightingale.       Nightingale.         ritish government.       She was paid by the       Image: She was paid by the         he made medicines       She was paid by the       Image: She was paid by the         for the soldiers.       She wade medicines       Image: She was paid by the         order the soldiers.       Image: She was paid by the       Image: She was paid by the         She set up the soldiers.       She set up the British Hotel.       She set up a hospital in Jamaica.         She travelled to Crimear       She set up a lorginal.       4         She travelled to Crimear       She travelled to Crimear       2         She travelled to Crimear       She travelled to Crimear       2	She worked in the			She worked in the		>		Award 2 marks for all four answers correct. Award 1 mark for three answers correct
S Florence       as Florence       as Florence         lightingale.       Nightingale.       Nightingale.         he was paid by the       Nightingale.       Nightingale.         he was paid by the       She was paid by the       N         iritish government.       British government.       N         So the was paid by the       N       N         he made medicines       V       N         So the soldiers.       She made medicines       V         Number the events to show the       N       She was paid hotel.       Sc         Number the events to show the       She set up the British Hotel.       Sc       Sc         She set up the British Hotel.       She set up a hospital in Jamaica.       She set up a hospital in Jamaica.       She set up a hospital in Jamaica.       A         She went to live in England.       A       A       A       A         She travelled to Crimen       She travelled to Crimen       She travelled to Crimen       She travelled to Crimen	same hospital			same hospital				
he was paid by the variable in the made medicines of the made medicines       She was paid by the british government.       N         he made medicines of the made medicines of the soldiers.       She made medicines           or the soldiers.       She made medicines            or the soldiers.       She made medicines            or the soldiers.              Number the events to show the order that Mary Seacole did them.             She set up the British Hotel.       She set up the British Hotel.       3            She set up a hospital in Jamaica.       She set up a hospital in Jamaica.        4           She travelled to Crimea         4             She travelled to Crimea          4	as Florence Nightingale.			as Florence Nightingale.				
Initish government.     British government.       he made medicines     She made medicines       or the soldiers.     She made medicines       or the soldiers.     Image medicines       or the soldiers.     Image medicines       or the soldiers.     Image medicines       She set up the British Hotel.     She set up the British Hotel.       She set up a hospital in Jamaica.     She set up a hospital in Jamaica.       She travelled to Crimea     She travelled to Crimea	She was paid by the			She was paid by the		>		
he made medicines       She made medicines       Image: She medicines <td>British government.</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>British government.</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>	British government.			British government.				
Number the events to show the order that Mary Seacole did them.       2c         She set up the British Hotel.       3         She set up the British Hotel.       3         She set up a hospital in Jamaica.       1 mark         She went to live in England.       5he went to live in England.         She travelled to Crimed       2c	She made medicines for the soldiers.			She made medicines for the soldiers.	>			
order that Mary Seacole did them.     1 mark       She set up the British Hotel.     She set up the British Hotel.     3       She set up a hospital in Jamaica.     She set up a hospital in Jamaica.     1       She went to live in England.     She went to live in England.     4		to show	the				2c	Ouestion focus: summarise main ideas from more than one paraaraph.
<ul> <li>She set up the British Hotel. 3</li> <li>Indica. She set up a hospital in Jamaica. 1</li> <li>She went to live in England. 4</li> <li>She travalled to Crimen. 2</li> </ul>		acole did	them.				1 mark	Strategies:
naica. She set up a hospital in Jamaica. 1 She went to live in England. 4 She travelled to Crimed. 2	She set up the Briti	ish Hotel.		She set up the British Ho	tel.	c		<ul> <li>Carefully read the guestion, marking key words.</li> </ul>
She went to live in England. 4 • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	She set up α hospit	al in Jam	aica.	She set up a hospital in J	lamaica.	-		<ul> <li>Scan the whole text for each of the events described.</li> </ul>
She travelled to Crimen	□ She went to live in	England.		She went to live in Engla	.pu	4		
	She travelled to Crimea.	mea.		She travelled to Crimea.		2		

#### Unit 14 POETRY

# Walking with My Iguana/A Big Surprise Brian Moses/Michaela Morgan

#### Key text features

- The texts are very different poems, but both describe unusual pets.
- The Teaching text is Walking with My Iguana by Brian Moses.
- The Practice text is A Big Surprise by Michaela Morgan.

#### Reading the Teaching text: Walking with My Iguana

- Introduce the text by asking the children if any of them know what an iguana is. Show them the picture.
- Does the creature look as if he would be a good pet? Where would you keep him? Ask the children what they think he would be fed on.
- Access the Interactive Modelling Software for this unit. Read the introductory paragraphs, explaining how the poem came to be written, before the children listen to the poem.
- Read the extract again, this time using the modelling software to model 'cracking' the questions together. Remember to look at the model answers and discuss strategies for different question types (see pages 116–117).

#### Reading the Practice text: A Big Surprise

- Read the poem to the children, pausing before the final few lines. Can they guess what the present is?
- Once they have read the poem, remind the children that they are now going to work independently to practise the strategies introduced during the teaching session.

#### Moving into writing

- Reread Walking with My Iguana.
- As a class, draw up a list of unlikely pets.
- Let pairs or groups of children select one of the creatures as the basis for their poem. Give them opportunities to research their pet before writing the poem.
- Look together at the structure of the iguana poem as the model for the children's own poems.



### Listening Comprehension: Questions and Answers



The listening comprehension questions can be accessed on the modelling software for this unit.

Q1:	Where does the poet walk with his iguana?
A1:	On the beach/by the sea
Strategy:	Consider where in the text the information might be found. Listen carefully to that part. Make a note of words or ideas used in the text.
••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
Q2:	What do some people do when they see the iguana out for his walk?
A2:	They phone the police.
Strategy:	Consider where in the text the information might be found. Listen carefully to that part. Make a note of words or ideas used in the text.
••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
Q3:	As well as walking with his iguana, what else does the poet do with him?
A3:	He lets him sit on his shoulder, take exercise and tickles him under the chin.
Strategy:	Listen carefully to the text. Jot down/draw other ways in which he enjoys the iguana's company.

#### **Extending reading**

*Tell Me a Dragon* – Jackie Morris *Cat-Rap* from *Everybody Got a Gift* – Grace Nichols *Please Do Not Feed the Animals* from *High Tide* – Robert Hull *Hey Little Bug* from *Hey Little Bug* – James Carter

₽
Iguana
My
With
Walking
text:
Teaching

	S	
	2	
	$\underline{\circ}$	
	in	
	ăj	
	3	
	=	
	σ	
	Ψ	
	2	
•	Ļ	
	_	
	$\mathbf{O}$	ו
•		
-	X	
	U	
	D	
	5	
(	J	
1		

	5			
Ø	Question	Answer	CD/Mark	Useful strategies
-	. What makes the iguana look "like	<ul> <li>when the temperature rises above 85</li> </ul>	2b	Question focus: identify key details from fiction.
	he's coming alive" (verse 3)?	<ul> <li>when it gets hot</li> </ul>	1 mark	Strategies:
				<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer.</li> <li>Carefully read the lines.</li> </ul>
2.		Accept any answer that matches the structure	29	Question focus: explain how meaning is enhanced by choice of words and
	Why do you think the author	or the meaning of the poem, e.g.	1 mark	phrases.
	repeats these lines so often during	<ul> <li>to give the rhythm of walking</li> </ul>		Strategies:
	the poem?	<ul> <li>to make it seem like it is something he does all the time</li> </ul>		Carefully read the question, marking key words.
		<ul> <li>to make breathing spaces between verses</li> </ul>		
		<ul> <li>because he likes saying the words</li> <li>because that is what he is doing</li> </ul>		
m.	. In the verses with four lines (verses	• "five"/"alive"	2f	Question focus: identify how narrative content is related and contributes to
	3, 4, 7, 8, 11, 12) there are rhymes	• "me"/"sea"	1 mark	meaning as a whole.
	and some words that are	<ul> <li>"surprise"/"exercise"</li> </ul>		Strategies:
	near-rhymes.	<ul> <li>"bed"/"head"</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
	Copy one pair of words that rhyme			<ul> <li>Look at the four-line verses.</li> </ul>
	or nearly rhyme.			<ul> <li>Use your knowledge of poetry to consider where to look for rhymes and poetr-thymes</li> </ul>
۲	. Why did someone call the police?	<ul> <li>because they thought the iguana was an</li> </ul>	2d	Question focus: make inferences from the text.
		alligator	1 mark	Strategies:
		because iguanas are reptiles, like alligators		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
				<ul> <li>Consider where in the poem to look for information.</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>because they were scared of the initian</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Scan that part of the text for the words in the question.</li> </ul>
		· because titled were scared of title igading		<ul> <li>Think about the way that iguanas look.</li> </ul>

Which part/detail could not be true?       sleepy head" (verse 12)         by you think an iguana would make a good pet?       Accept either 'Yes' or 'No' if supported by reasons from the text, e.g.         Imake a good pet?       Yes         Imake a good pet?       Y		<ul> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the poem to look for the answer.</li> <li>Carefully read that verse and identify the ideas that can not be true.</li> <li>Question focus: make inferences from the text.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question marking key words.</li> </ul>
uner:       Do you think an iguana would       Accept either 'Yes' or 'No' if supported by make a good pet?         Do you think an iguana would       Accept either 'Yes' or 'No' if supported by reasons from the text, e.g.         Provide the text, e.g.       Provide text, e.g.         Provide text       Provide text, e.g.		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the poem to look for the answer.</li> <li>Carefully read that verse and identify the ideas that can not be true.</li> <li>Question focus: make inferences from the text.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question marking key words</li> </ul>
Accept either 'Yes' or 'No' if supported by reasons from the text, e.g. Yes • You can take it for walks. • It can sit on your shoulder. • It loves to be tickled under its chin.		<ul> <li>Consider where in the poem to look for the answer.</li> <li>Carefully read that verse and identify the ideas that can not be true.</li> <li>Question focus: make inferences from the text.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question marking key words</li> </ul>
Do you think an iguana would       Accept either 'Yes' or 'No' if supported by make a good pet?         Imake a good pet?       Accept either 'Yes' or 'No' if supported by reasons from the text, e.g.         Imake a good pet?       No         Imake a good pet?       Yes         Imake a good pet?       Y		<ul> <li>Carefully read that verse and identify the ideas that can not be true.</li> <li>Question focus: make inferences from the text.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question marking key words</li> </ul>
Do you think an iguana would       Accept either 'Yes' or 'No' if supported by make a good pet?         make a good pet?       reasons from the text, e.g.         Yes       No         Explain your answer, using ideas from the text.       • You can take it for walks.         If com the text.       • It can sit on your shoulder.		Question focus: make inferences from the text. Strategies: • Carefully rend the question marking key words
<ul> <li>pet? reasons from the text, e.g.</li> <li>No Yes</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>No an take it for walks.</li> <li>It can sit on your shoulder.</li> <li>It loves to be tickled under its chin.</li> </ul>	1 mark	Strategies: Carefully rend the question marking key words
<ul> <li>No</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>You can take it for walks.</li> <li>It can sit on your shoulder.</li> <li>It loves to be tickled under its</li> </ul>		Correfully read the ausstion marking key words
<ul> <li>You can take it for walks.</li> <li>It can sit on your shoulder.</li> <li>It loves to be tickled under its</li> </ul>		
<ul> <li>It can sit on your shoulder.</li> <li>It loves to be tickled under its</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Skim-read the whole poem while thinking about the question.</li> </ul>
It loves to be tickled under its chin.		<ul> <li>Decide on your answer to the question.</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Look for at least one reason from the text to support your idea.</li> </ul>
No		Do not accept answers from general knowledge (e.g. it eats insects) or opinions
<ul> <li>It only likes really hot temperatures.</li> </ul>	is.	(e.g. I would feel silly taking it for a walk).
It worries other people.		
It has spines on its back that make it look	e it look	
grim.		

# A Big Surprise

Michaela Morgan

- For my presents, I said I'd like Computer games, A mountain bike, An electric train Or a model plane But most of all I'd like a bike.
- 8 I opened my presents
   And what did I find there?
   A hand-knitted hat
   And a squeaky bear,
   More underpants from my aunts
   And socks (grey, one pair).
- I said "thank you" nicely, I tried to smile
  But what was I thinking
  All the while?
  I was thinking
  I wanted computer games,
  A mountain bike,
  An electric train
  Or a model plane
  But most of all
  I'd have liked
  A bike.
- 26 "There's just one last thing to unwrap," they said.
  "It's a big surprise we've kept it in the shed.
  It's special, it comes with love From the lot of us ..."
- 32 Now I'm the only kid in school With my own hippopotamus.

ame:		Class:	Date:
Which pres	sent did the narrator want most of all?		
What does	s the word " <i>more</i> " tell us in verse 2? Tick <b>one</b> .		
He wanted	l underpants.		
His aunts h	nave given him underpants before.		
He had alre	eady opened underpants in a different present.		
He did not	like his aunt.		
"And socks	<i>(grey, one pair)"</i> (verse 2). Why didn't the poet wr	rite "And one pair of g	rey socks"?
Write <b>two</b>	pairs of rhyming words from the first two verses.		
Which wor	d in verse 3 tells you the narrator didn't feel happy	y?	
Why did th	ne narrator say " <i>thank you</i> " even if he didn't like th	ne present?	
"It's a big s	surprise/we've kept it in the shed" (verse 4).		
<b>a)</b> What d	lid the narrator think when he heard that?		
<b>b)</b> Explain	n your αnswer.		
How do yo	u think the narrator will feel when he sees the pres	sent?	
The poem	has five verses. Draw lines to match the main idea	a to each of the five ve	rses.
Verse 1	The child receives his big surprise.		
Verse 2	The child is disappointed.		
Verse 3	The child opens his presents.		
Verse 4	The child is told there is one last big present.	t.	

S
<b>~</b>
0
12
21
<u><u></u></u>
σ
U U
Ē
Ŧ
-
σ
Ē
.=
<b>_</b>
σ
E E
2
<u></u>

# Practice text: A Big Surprise

	)			
Ŋu	Question	Answer	CD/Mark	Useful strategies
-	Which present did the narrator	a bike	2b	Question focus: retrieve and record information.
	want most of all?		1 mark	Strategies:
				<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for the answer.</li> <li>Carefully read that part of the text.</li> </ul>
2.	What does the word "more" tell us	His aunts have given him underpants before.	2α	Question focus: explain the meaning of words in context.
[	in verse 2? Tick <b>one</b> .		1 mark	Strategies:
	He wanted underpants.			<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
	His aunts have given him			• Scan the text looking for the word "more".
[	underpants before.			Carefully read that part of the text.
	He had already opened underpants in a different present.			<ul> <li>Look again at the explanations given.</li> <li>Select the answer that best explains the meaning.</li> </ul>
	He did not like his aunt.			
с.	"And socks (grey, one pair)"	• The last word in the line must rhyme with	2f	Question focus: explain how content is related and contributes to meaning as
	(verse 2). why didn t the poet write:	Dear (verse z).	1 mark	a whole.
	"And one pair of grey socks"?	"And one pair of grey socks" does not fit		Strategies:
		мил пе иучит ала путе ог <u>пе роет.</u>		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
				<ul> <li>Scan the poem for the line.</li> <li>To come hand south to line in the accession When down't in 642</li> </ul>
				<ul> <li>In your head, say the line in the question. Why doesn't it fit?</li> </ul>
4.	Write <b>two</b> pairs of rhyming words from the first two verses.	Accept any two of: • <i>"like"/"bike</i> "	2f 1 mark	Question focus: identify how content is related and contributes to meaning as a whole.
		<ul> <li>"train"/"plane"</li> </ul>		Strategies:
		<ul> <li>"there"/"bear"/"pair" (accept any two of these words)</li> </ul>		• Carefully read the question, marking key words.
				<ul> <li>Look at the verses.</li> <li>Use your knowledge of poetry to consider where to look for rhymes.</li> </ul>
ம்	Which word in verse 3 tells you the narrator did not feel happy?	"tried"	2g 1 mark	Question focus: identify how meaning is enhanced through choice of words and phrases.
				Strategies:
				<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
				Consider where in the text to look for ideas.
				<ul> <li>Carerully read that part of the text to identify the word.</li> </ul>

<u>.</u>	Why did the narrator say "thank	<ul> <li>He was being polite.</li> </ul>	2d	Question focus: make inferences from the text.
	you" even if he didn't like the	<ul> <li>He had good manners.</li> </ul>	1 mark	Strategies:
	present?	<ul> <li>His mum would say he had to.</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
				<ul> <li>Carefully read the poem, considering the question. Think about your own experience of receiving gifts.</li> </ul>
7.	"It's a big surprise/we've kept it in	(a) It's a bike.	2d	Question focus: explain and justify inferences with evidence from the text.
	the shed" (verse 4).	(b) • The narrator really wanted a bike, which	2 marks	Strategies:
	(a) What did the narrator think	is a big present and might be kept in		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
	שחפת הפינו המנג	a sriea. - The second		<ul> <li>Consider where in the text to look for ideas.</li> </ul>
	(b) Explain your answer.	<ul> <li>The harrator was thinking about a pike when he heard the words.</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Carefully read that part of the text.</li> <li>Remember to include an explanation.</li> </ul>
				Award 1 mark for each part of the question. If the answer to (a) is not ' a bike' the
				marks can still be awarded if the answer to (b) offers a reasonable explanation to the answer given.
∞i	How do you think the narrator will	Нарру	2e	Question focus: predict what might happen from details stated and implied.
	feel when he sees the present?	<ul> <li>A hippo would be a great present because</li> </ul>	1 mark	Strategies:
		no one else would have one		
		<ul> <li>The child could take it to show and tell.</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the text to look for ideas</li> </ul>
		• A hippo is a big surprise, just as the child		Carefully read that part of the text.
		was told.		<ul> <li>Remember to include an explanation.</li> </ul>
		Not happy		
		<ul> <li>They really wanted a bike.</li> </ul>		
		<ul> <li>Hippos are dangerous.</li> <li>A hippo would not be happy living in a shed.</li> </ul>		
9.	The poem has five verses. Draw	1 $$ The child receives his big surprise.	2c	Question focus: summarise main ideas from more than one paragraph.
	lines to match the main idea to	2 - The child is disappointed.	1 mark	Strategies:
	each of the hve verses. (See right.)	3 The child opens his presents.		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> </ul>
		4 — — The child is told there is one		<ul> <li>Reread the poem, verse by verse, considering which sentence best summarises</li> </ul>
		/ last big present.		each verse.
		5 The child says what he would		<ul> <li>Match the verses to their summary statements.</li> </ul>
		like for his birthday.		Award 2 marks if all five sentences are correctly sequenced.
				Award 1 mark for three correctly identified.

#### Unit 15 POETRY

# Scissors/New School Allan Ahlberg/Kevin McCann

#### Key text features

The texts are both rhyming poems with a strong rhythm.

- The Teaching text is *Scissors* from the poetry collection *Please Mrs Butler* by Allan Ahlberg.
- The Practice text is the poem New School by Kevin McCann.

#### Reading the Teaching text: Scissors

- Introduce the text by asking the children if any of them are familiar with Allan Ahlberg.
- Explain that Allan Ahlberg used to be a primary school teacher, so he has a good idea about what goes on in classrooms.
- Access the Interactive Modelling Software for this unit. Read the extract aloud. As you read the text, ask the children to think about any occasions when they have heard this type of language.
- Read the extract again, this time using the modelling software to model 'cracking' the questions together. Remember to look at the model answers and discuss strategies for different question types (see pages 124–125).

#### Reading the Practice text: New School

- Invite the children to reflect on the experience of being new. Acknowledge that there are both good times and some scary/unhappy times.
- Read the poem together.
- Once they have read the poem, remind the children that they are now going to work independently to practise the strategies introduced during the teaching session.

#### Moving into writing

- Reread Scissors.
- Talk about your own classroom: What do your children lose?
- Ask the children to prepare and read the poem in different voices, e.g. angry, frustrated, jocular, sarcastic.
- Challenge groups of children to choose different verses from the poem and change words in them to reflect the reality of your classroom. Invite the children to read their edited version of this poem in different voices.



### Listening Comprehension: Questions and Answers



The listening comprehension questions can be accessed on the modelling software for this unit.

Q1:	Who is talking in this poem?
A1:	The teacher is talking. Lines such as " <i>Everyone listen to me</i> " (verse 1) are things that teachers say. Only the teacher could threaten to keep children in. The speaker is giving instructions in the classroom – and that is what teachers do.
Strategy:	Consider where in the text the information might be found. Listen carefully to that part. Make a note of words or ideas used in the text.
••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
Q2:	How many different ways of scissors being lost are mentioned in the poem? What are they?
A2:	Five: "disappear"; "lose themselves" (verse 1), "Melt away" (verse 3); "explode" (verse 3); "running off up the road" (verse 3)
Strategy:	Consider where in the text the information might be found. Listen carefully to that part. Make a note of words or ideas used in the text.
••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
Q3:	Do you think the teacher really will keep them in all week if they do not find the scissors? Explain your answer.
A3:	No: the teacher is making threats to show he is serious.
Strategy:	Listen carefully to the text. Make a note of ideas.

#### **Extending reading**

Please Mrs Butler - Allan Ahlberg

Behind the Staffroom Door from Very Best of Brian Moses – Brian Moses

₽
Scissors
text:
Teaching

# Cracking the questions

ð	Question	Answer	CD/Mark	Useful strategies
-	<ol> <li>(α) What time of day is it?</li> </ol>	(a) It is the end of the afternoon, after $2.30$ .	2d	Question focus: make inferences from the text.
	(b) Explain how you know.	(b) They are tidying up and it is already after "holf-oret two" (varea 1) so it is the and of	2 marks	Strategies:
		the school day.		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Consider where in the poem to look for the answer.</li> <li>Carefully read that verse and identify information to use when deducing the answer.</li> </ul>
				Award 1 mark for each part of the question.
2.	. Why is the teacher cross?	There were ten pairs of scissors at half-past	2b	Question focus: identify key details from fiction and non-fiction.
		two and now there are only three.	1 mark	Strategies:
				<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the poem for lines that explain the problem.</li> </ul>
м.		search/explore	2α	Question focus: give the meaning of words in context.
	them" (line 23)		1 mark	Strategies:
	Suggest another word the poet			• Carefully read the question, marking key words.
	נטעום חמעיפ טאפט ווואנפטט טו "מחצמרג"			• Scan the poem for the line quoted.
				<ul> <li>Read the verse for the context.</li> <li>Think about other words that mean the same thing.</li> </ul>
4.		• He says that scissors do not have legs.	29	Question focus: explain how meaning is enhanced through choice of words and
	scissors having " <i>legs</i> " (verse 3)?	<ul> <li>Scissors have got two/a pair of blades and</li> </ul>	1 mark	phrases.
		people have two/a pair of legs.		Strategies:
		<ul> <li>He is saying that scissors can not move without someone moving them.</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text for the word "pairs" and think each time about what it means.</li> </ul>

<ul> <li>Question focus: identify key details from fiction.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Skim-read the poem, considering the question.</li> <li>Carefully reread the poem, looking for key details about the scissors.</li> <li>Select two which you think are important.</li> <li>Award 1 mark for each acceptable fact, up to a total of 2 marks.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Question focus: predict what might happen next from details stated and implied.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Skim-read the poem again while thinking about the answer to the question.</li> <li>Use your own experience. What usually happens after an event like this?</li> <li>Scan the poem again, looking for words and phrases that support your idea.</li> </ul>
2b 2 marks	2e 1 mark
<ul> <li>In the poem the teacher is cross</li> <li>Accept facts such as the following.</li> <li>because scissors have disappeared.</li> <li>They were all there at half-past two.</li> <li>Write two things about the scissors</li> <li>Seven pairs have disappeared.</li> <li>Only three pairs are still there.</li> <li>that you know to be true.</li> <li>Scissors can not lose themselves.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Accept an answer that builds on the information in the poem. E.g.</li> <li>The children will ransack the room and find the scissors.</li> <li>The teacher will still be cross when the bell goes but he will let the children go home anyway.</li> </ul>
<ol> <li>In the poem the teacher is cross because scissors have disappeared. Write two things about the scissors that you know to be true.</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>What do you think will happen next in the classroom?</li> </ol>

## **New School**

Kevin McCann

- In the playground corner
   I stand and see:
   Girls with skipping ropes,
   Boys with footballs
   And everyone shouts at once.
- 6 In the playground corner
  I stand and see:
  A teacher looking at his watch,
  Cup of coffee in one hand
  And a whistle in the other.
- In the playground corner
  I stand and see:
  Big kids sharing jokes and sweets,
  One skits our headmaster
  And everyone knows everyone else.
- In the playground cornerI stand on my ownAnd wish and wishI could just go home.



am	າe:	Class:	Date:
W	/ho is "I" in this poem?		
	st <b>three</b> things you know are in the playground in the poer ne teacher).	m (apart from the childr	ren and
_			
H	ow do you know what time of day it is?		
	One <u>skits</u> our headmaster." uggest another way the poet could have said the same thir	ng.	
	And everyone knows everyone else." /hy do you think the narrator included this information?		
Ye	ead the title of the poem. Is this a good title for the poem? es No D ive <b>one</b> reason from the poem to help explain your answer		
	/hat is the effect of starting most of the verses with the sa		
Ye	o you think the playground seems like a happy place for m es No D xplain your answer.	ost of the children?	
H	ow does the poet want you to feel about the narrator? Exp	ılain your answer.	

Ъ	Practice text: New School			Cracking the questions
Ø	Question	Answer	CD/Mark	Useful strategies
<del>.</del>	. Who is " $I$ " in this poem?	<ul> <li>someone starting a new school</li> <li>a child</li> <li>a little, shy or new girl/boy</li> </ul>	2d 1 mark	Question focus: make inferences from the text. Strategies: • Carefully read the question, marking key words.
5	<ul> <li>List three things you know are in the plavaround in the poem (apart</li> </ul>		2b	<ul> <li>Skim-read the text to gain an overall understanding while considering the question.</li> <li>Question focus: retrieve and record information.</li> </ul>
	from the children and the teacher).	<ul> <li>skipping ropes</li> <li>footballs</li> <li>cup of coffee</li> <li>whistle</li> </ul>	3 marks	<ul> <li>strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the text, looking for nouns that name things that might be in the</li> </ul>
		• sweets		<ul> <li>playground.</li> <li>Check again with the question to make sure that the things you have found are allowed.</li> <li>Remember to write three things.</li> <li>Aword 1 mark for each correct answer up to a total of 3 marks.</li> </ul>
'n	. How do you know what time of day it is?	Accept an explanation based on the child's own school day. E.g. Playtime finishes at 11 o'clock. The teacher is looking at his watch	2d 1 mark	Question focus: make inferences from the text. Strategies:
		so it must be nearly the end of playtime.		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Skim-read the text to gain an overall understanding while considering the question.</li> </ul>
4.		Accept suggestions that reflect the poet's intention, e.g.	2a 1 mark	Question focus: give the meaning of words in context. Strategies:
	could have said the same thing with the same meaning.	<ul> <li>makes fun of</li> <li>sends up</li> <li>mimics</li> <li>copies in a silly way</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the poem for the line in the question and read the line in context.</li> <li>Consider the possible meaning of the word and try to think of other ways of saying the same thing.</li> </ul>
ù.	. "And everyone knows everyone else."	The narrator is feeling lonely. He or she does not know anyone and it emphasises his or her	2d 1 mark	Question focus: make inferences from the text. Strategies:
	Why do you think the narrator included this information?	teeling of being alone.		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the poem for relevant words.</li> <li>Use ideas in the poem and not your own experience.</li> </ul>
9.		Yes	2f	Question focus: identify how narrative content is related and contributes to
	good title for the poem?	The title tells us what the problem is and why the narrator is feeling so lonely and unhappy.	1 mark	meaning as a whole. Strategies:
	Give <b>one</b> reason from the poem to help explain your answer.	No The title is about being at school but the poem is just about being in the playground.		<ul> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Reread the title and consider the question while you reread the poem.</li> </ul>

<ul> <li>Question focus: explain how information is related and contributes to meaning as a whole.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Reread the poem while considering the question.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Question focus: make inferences from the text.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Scan the poem looking for evidence of happy or unhappy children.</li> <li>Identify ideas to use in your explanation.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Question focus: make inferences from the text.</li> <li>Strategies:</li> <li>Carefully read the question, marking key words.</li> <li>Skim-read the poem considering your answer.</li> <li>Stan the poem for ideas to use in the answer.</li> <li>Award 1 mark for a plausible response and a second mark for a brief explanation which includes ideas from the poem.</li> </ul>
2f 1 mark	2d 1 mark	2d 2 marks
<ul> <li>It introduces new ideas in each new verse.</li> <li>The repetition makes it seem as if playtime is going on for a long time.</li> <li>It says what the child is doing.</li> <li>It shows when it is a new verse.</li> <li>It's a bit boring.</li> </ul>	Yes • They have got footballs and skipping ropes. • They are all playing games and shouting. • They are sharing sweets and jokes. No • They are all arguing and shouting. • Some of the girls might want to play football but they all have skipping ropes.	<ul> <li>Accept answers such as:</li> <li>sorry for him/her because we understand why s/he is just standing in the corner of the playground and not trying to join in</li> <li>fed up with him/her because there is lots going on but s/he is so busy feeling sorry for him/herself and wishing s/he could go home</li> </ul>
<ol> <li>What is the effect of starting most of the verses with the same two lines?</li> </ol>	<ul> <li>8. Do you think the playground seems like a happy place for most of the children?</li> <li>Tes No</li> <li>Explain your answer.</li> </ul>	9. How does the poet want you to feel about the narrator? Explain your answer.

#### Assessment Task 1 FICTION

# It's Not My Fault Bel Mooney

#### Teacher notes: It's Not My Fault

Curriculum references: Years 3-4

Programme of study: Reading comprehension

Children should be taught to:

- develop positive attitudes to reading and understanding of what they read, by:
  - listening to and discussing a wide range of fiction, poetry, plays, non-fiction and reference books or textbooks
- understand what they read, in books they can read independently, by:

- checking that the text makes sense to them, discussing their understanding, and explaining the meaning of words in context
- asking questions to improve their understanding of a text
- drawing inferences such as inferring characters' feelings, thoughts and motives from their actions, and justifying inferences with evidence
- predicting what might happen from details stated and implied

• Children working independently should read the

assess their reading fluency and expression.

text and complete their answers. Circulate as they

do so, and ask children to read aloud to you from

the point in the text they have reached, so you can

 identifying main ideas drawn from more than one paragraph and summarising these.

#### Running the task

As this task is designed to help you understand the children's reading strategies as well as their understanding of the text, you will need to read with children individually in some cases.

- Explain that they are going to read a text about three children looking after a baby.
- Support children working towards the expected standard in writing skills or reading skills, as suggested in the introduction to this book.

#### Assessment guidance

Use the list below to identify the content domains that the children are working on in this task.

Typically, children working at the expected standard will:

• retrieve key details and quotations from fiction and non-fiction to demonstrate understanding	
of character, events and information	2b
• accurately and selectively summarise main ideas, events, characters and information in fiction	
and non-fiction texts	2c
• explain and justify inferences, providing evidence from the text to support reasoning	2d
<ul> <li>make developed predictions that are securely rooted in the text.</li> </ul>	2e

#### What to expect

1	Why did Mum want to go next door? Tick the correct answer.	(2b)
	Most children should answer this correctly. Some children working towards the expected standard may select the wrong part of the text and tick the first option (" <i>Because Dad was in bed with a cold.</i> ").	
2	Why did Mum want the children to keep quiet?	(2d)
	Children working towards the expected standard may say that it is because Dad is in bed with a cold and that noise will disturb him. Most children will understand that the children's father is probably asleep and may be woken by noise downstairs, and that if he doesn't sleep he may not recover as well. Some children working at greater depth within the expected standard may show awareness beyond this, e.g. "Mum doesn't want the neighbours to be disturbed."	
3	What makes Kitty think that William is her happiest friend?	(2d)
	Most children will state that he always has a smile on his face. Children working at greater depth within the expected standard will also see that " <i>Nothing seemed to put him in a bad mood</i> " and that he doesn't seem to mind looking after the baby – he is willing to help.	
4	Do you think Daniel is older or younger than Kitty? Explain your answer.	(2d)
	Children working towards the expected standard may refer to him being able to carry the baby, so assume that he is bigger and therefore probably older. Most children will see that he is carrying the baby because he has more responsibility. They may point out that he enjoys playing games that are too young for him – as Kitty and William's games are – so this shows he is older. Some children working at greater depth within the expected standard may also point out that Daniel says he supposes he will have to help them, implying that he is an older brother.	
5	Whose fault is it that the baby started to cry?	(2d)
	Children working towards the expected standard are more likely to say that Kitty threw the cushion that started him off; children working at greater depth within the expected standard will explain that Daniel goaded her into it.	
6	Number these events from 1 to 5 in the order that they happened in the story.	(2c)
	Most children working at the expected standard should be able to correctly number these events. Children working towards the expected standard may not read the text correctly and may suggest that Mum went out first.	
7	Why would the children be worried when the baby started to cry?	(2d)
	Most children will say that they might be worried because it would wake their father. Children working at greater depth within the expected standard might also suggest that their mother might hear from next door, or that they may not be able to calm him down before their mother returns, and so they will get into trouble.	
8	What do you think Mum would say if she walked back in at the end of the text?	(2e)
	Children working at greater depth within the expected standard should give a full response, explaining that Mum would be cross and worried and explain why. Children working at the expected standard may give only one explanation and fail to elaborate further. Children working towards the expected standard may only give a simple response, which may consist of dialogue without demonstrating a clear prediction.	

Mum said that Kitty and Daniel had to look after Baby Tom while she popped next door. "William's mum is so good at knitting, and I've really messed up this little jumper I was making for Tom," she said. "I need her to put me right." "Oh, Mum, William was coming to play with me," moaned Kitty. "All the better," said Mum. "That makes three of you to watch Tom. I want you all to stay in the sitting-room and play together. Dad's in bed with his cold, so I don't want you to make too much noise, either."

"That's boring," muttered Dan.

"The most boring thing in the world is children saying things are boring!" retorted Mum. William arrived, his usual smile on his face. Kitty realised he was her happiest friend. Nothing seemed to put him in a bad mood. When she said they all had to look after the baby he said, "That's OK."

"No, it's not. I wanted to make a den at the bottom of the garden," said Kitty.

'But it's raining!" said William.

"I suppose we could make one in the sitting-room – while we're looking after Tom," said Kitty slowly. Mum called that she wouldn't be long, and Daniel came into the sitting-room carrying the baby. When Kitty told her brother that they had decided to make a den, he grinned. Daniel always liked playing games he pretended were much too young for him, just like Kitty liked to re-read her first storybooks, with the very big print.

"Oh, all right," sighed Dan. "I supposed I'll have to help you." He put Tom's little bouncy chair on the rug and fastened the baby in it. Tom waved his arms about and shouted excitedly, as if he knew something good was about to happen. "I know what we could do," said William. "Make a little house for Tom by pulling out the sofa, and putting a tablecloth – or something over, and ..."

"No – chairs would be better," said Daniel. "You know, like we used to do, Kit?" They looked around, and talked some more, and started to pull the sofa out ... and Baby Tom started to feel bored. As far as he was concerned, nothing was happening. So he started to wave his arms about like windmills and kick his legs – all of which made him hotter and hotter, and more and more uncomfortable ... And that made him start to whimper. "Oh no," said Kitty.

'What's the matter with him?" asked William.

"Maybe he's got a pooey nappy, in which case you'll have to change it, Kit!" grinned Daniel. "Why me?" "Cos you're a girl – and it's a girl's job!" shouted Dan. "What a lot of old-fashioned rubbish!" shouted Kitty. "In any case, Dad changes nappies – so there!" She threw a cushion at her brother, but he ducked and it went rolling over the rug and just touched Tom's legs. It was gentle – but the baby didn't like it one bit.

"Waaaaaaa!"

Name:	Class:	Date:

Read the text, then answer the questions.

1 Why did Mum want to go next door? Tick the correct answer.

Because Dad was in bed with a cold.	
Because William was coming to play.	
So the children could look after the baby.	
Because she wanted to ask for her neighbour's help.	

- **2** Why did Mum want the children to keep quiet?
- 3 What makes Kitty think that William is her happiest friend?
- **4** Do you think Daniel is older or younger than Kitty? Explain your answer.
- 5 Whose fault is it that the baby started to cry?
- **6** Number these events from 1 to 5 in the order that they happened in the story.

Mum went out	
The children started to make a den.	
Baby Tom became hot and started to whimper.	
William came to play.	
Baby Tom cried.	

- 7 Why would the children be worried when the baby started to cry?
- 8 What do you think Mum would say if she walked back in at the end of the text?

#### Assessment Task 2 FICTION

# A Cat Called Penguin Holly Webb

#### Teacher notes: A Cat Called Penguin

Curriculum references: Years 3-4

Programme of study: Reading comprehension

Children should be taught to:

- develop positive attitudes to reading and understanding of what they read, by:
  - discussing words and phrases that capture the reader's interest and imagination
- understand what they read, in books they can read independently, by:
- checking that the text makes sense to them, discussing their understanding and explaining the meaning of words in context
- drawing inferences such as inferring characters' feelings, thoughts and motives from their actions, and justifying inferences with evidence
- identifying how language, structure, and presentation contribute to meaning
- participate in discussion about both books that are read to them and those they can read for themselves, taking turns and listening to what others say.

#### Running the task

- Explain to the children that this extract is the start of a book entitled A Cat Called Penguin.
- Ask them to listen to the first line being read and then tell a partner what they know just from this line. Take feedback from the class.
- Discuss how this first line is a good introduction to the setting and book. Ask the children if this line captures their interest. Ask them who they think Alfie might be, and who or what might be "*purring*". Remind the children to use the title of the book as a clue.
- Now read the rest of the first paragraph to the children and ask them to reflect on their answers to the questions and how accurate they were.

- Ask them to finish reading the text in pairs.
- For question 3, explain that they should write "T" if the statement is true or "F" if the statement is false.
- Explain that they should write only one word for question 6.
- Now ask the class to complete the questions for the task.
- Circulate while the children complete the questions, providing support if necessary.
- When the children have finished, discuss whether they like the writing in this extract and whether they would want to read the rest of the book. Ask them to give reasons for their choice.

#### Assessment guidance

Use the list below to identify the content domains that the children are working on in this task.

Typically, children working at the expected standard will:

<ul> <li>show an understanding of the meaning of vocabulary in context</li> <li>retrieve key details and quotations from fiction and non-fiction to demonstrate understanding</li> </ul>	2α
<ul> <li>of character, events and information</li> <li>provide developed explanations for key information and events and for characters' actions and</li> </ul>	2b
motivations	2b
<ul> <li>make developed inferences drawing on evidence from the text</li> </ul>	2d
• explain and justify inferences, providing evidence from the text to support reasoning	2d
<ul> <li>identify/explain how the choice of language enhances the meaning of texts.</li> </ul>	2g

#### What to expect

1	What impression do we get from the first paragraph about how Penguin and Alfie are feeling? Tick <i>two</i> .	(2g)
	Children working at the expected standard should be able to select the two correct options to answer this question. Children working towards the expected standard may only select one answer and may need reminding to choose two.	
2	In the extract, where are Alfie and Penguin sitting? Give evidence from the text to support your answer.	(2d)
	Most children working at the expected standard should be able to answer this question correctly, giving a suitable piece of evidence from the text. Children working towards the expected standard may fail to interpret that the characters are actually sitting in the tree and may suggest that they are leaning against the tree. These children may also offer evidence that does not support the character's location. Children working at greater depth within the expected standard should be able to provide a well-selected piece of evidence from the text.	
3	Write <i>T</i> (true) or <i>F</i> (false) for each of the following statements.	(2b)
	This question is quite straightforward and most children should be able to find the answers in the text to be able to answer it correctly. Children working towards the expected standard may need extra support to find the answer to the third and fourth statements.	
4	What did Penguin do in the extract that tells us he loved Alfie?	(2d)
	Most children working at the expected standard should be able to answer this correctly. Some children may incorrectly suggest answers that do not accurately answer the question, e.g. " <i>he purred</i> ", " <i>he slept in the tree</i> ", or do not specifically tell us what Penguin did, e.g. " <i>he didn't run away</i> ".	
5	"Don't fall off," Alfie murmured woozily.	(2b)
	Why was this "a silly thing to say"?	
	Many children will answer with the line in the text immediately following the quote, " <i>Penguin never fell.</i> " Children working at greater depth may put this in their own words or elaborate using details from later in the text. Children working towards the expected standard may need reminding not to simply restate the question, e.g. " <i>that was a silly thing to say</i> ".	
6	<i>Find</i> and <i>copy one</i> word from the third paragraph that tells us Alfie had tried to encourage Penguin to walk along the washing line.	(2a)
	Children need to be reminded to only copy one word; giving any more words will result in the answer being marked incorrect.	
7	Why did Alfie think about getting "a cat-shaped leotard"? Tick one.	(2d)
	Children could be encouraged to use a process of elimination to help them answer this question.	
8	Do you think Penguin is pleased about Alfie's plans to dress him up? Explain your answer.	(2d)
	This should be a straightforward question for most children to answer. Children working towards the expected standard may struggle to explain their answer. Children working at greater depth within the expected standard should be able to clearly explain their thoughts.	

Purring rumbled through the sleepy sunshine, and Alfie yawned again. It was a warm September Sunday afternoon, and he was full of lunch, and apples, and a squashed bar of chocolate that he'd forgotten was in the back pocket of his jeans. He settled himself more comfortably against the trunk of the apple tree and leaned his arm against the thick branch that jutted out in just the right place. Penguin, who was draped across the same branch like a fat furry rug, leaned forward a little and licked Alfie's elbow lovingly.

"Don't fall off," Alfie murmured woozily.

But it was a silly thing to say. Penguin never fell. He didn't look as though he was in the best shape for climbing trees – one would think his stomach would get in the way, particularly for jumping. But Penguin had

perfect balance, good even for a cat. Alfie smiled to himself as he remembered trying to persuade Penguin to walk along the washing line during the summer holidays. Penguin had refused, even for smoky bacon crisps, his favourite. (Although he had stolen the crisps off the table later.) Alfie had been convinced that Penguin would be a fabulous tightrope artist. They should try again. Perhaps it was the lack of circus music and Big Top atmosphere that had put him off. Maybe a costume ... Alfie looked at Penguin thoughtfully. He wondered how easy it would be to get hold of a cat-shaped leotard.

Penguin opened one yellowish-golden eye a slit and stared sternly at Alfie, as though warning him that attempts to dress him in a sequinned cloak would result in severe scratches. But he didn't stop purring.

					_
Name:				Class:	Date:
Read the text, then a	answer the questi	ons.			
1 What impression a Tick <b>two</b> .	do we get from th	e first parag	graph about hov	w Penguin an	d Alfie are feeling?
excited	irritated		worried		
lonely	relaxed		sleepy		
<b>2</b> In the extract, when	re are Alfie and Per	nguin sitting	? Give evidence fr	rom the text to	o support your answer
3 Write T (true) or F	(false) for each o	of the follow	ing statements.		
Penguin is purring		Γ			
The story is set on		ust.			
Alfie had just eate		[			
Penguin was overv					
Alfie used the brar	-				
<b>4</b> What did Penguin	-	that tells u	s he loved Alfie?		
5 "Don't fall off," Alj	fie murmured woo	<i>ozily.</i> Why w	ras this "a silly th	ning to say"?	
6 Find and copy on Penguin to walk al			aph that tells us	Alfie had trie	ed to encourage
<b>7</b> Why did Alfie thin	k about getting "d	a cat-shape	d leotard"? Tick	one.	
He wanted to take	e Penguin to a fan	icy dress pa	rty.		
He thought Pengu	in would look goo	od in a leota	ard.		
He thought it mig	ht help Penguin a	ict like a cira	cus performer.		
He thought Pengu	in would be cold	in the winte	۶r		

#### Assessment Task 3 FICTION

# Go Ahead, Secret Seven Enid Blyton

#### Teacher notes: Go Ahead, Secret Seven

Curriculum references: Years 3-4

Programme of study: Reading comprehension

Children should be taught to:

- develop positive attitudes to reading and understanding of what they read by:
  - discussing words and phrases that capture the reader's interest and imagination
- understand what they read, in books they can read independently, by:
  - asking questions to improve their understanding of a text

- drawing inferences such as inferring characters' feelings, thoughts and motives from their actions, and justifying inferences with evidence
- predicting what might happen from details stated and implied
- identifying how language, structure and presentation contribute to meaning
- participate in discussion about both books that are read to them and those they can read for themselves, taking turns and listening to what others say.

#### Running the task

- Explain to the children that they are going to read a story written by a famous author, Enid Blyton. George and his friends call themselves 'The Secret Seven' and they try to solve crimes. They decide that they must practise the skills they need. Here, George is practising "shadowing" people. Explain that this means following someone without being seen.
- You may choose to remind the children that verbs are 'doing words' and revise this before the task starts so that they are better able to tackle the questions that refer to verbs.
- Give the children time to read the story independently, then discuss any vocabulary they find difficult.
- The children then carry out the task in groups or individually. Support children working towards the expected standard, as suggested in the introduction to this book.
- At the end of the task, talk with the children about why George was not keeping himself safe. Nobody knew where he was, and even he didn't know where he was going.

#### Assessment guidance

Use the list below to identify the content domains that the children are working on in this task.

Typically, children working at the expected standard will:

retrieve key details and quotations from fiction and non-fiction to demonstrate understanding	
of character, events and information	2b
make developed inferences drawing on evidence from the text	2d
explain and justify inferences, providing evidence from the text to support reasoning	2d
make developed predictions that are securely rooted in the text	2e
identify/explain how the sequence of events in narrative fiction contributes to meaning as a whole	2f
identify/explain how the choice of language enhances the meaning of texts.	2g

#### What to expect

1	How do you think George is feeling at the beginning of this story? How do you know that?	(2d)
	Most children will explain that George is doing something scary, so he is scared. Children working at greater depth within the expected standard will refer to the text, e.g. "the fact that his heart is beating rapidly tells us that he is scared".	
2	Why is this story set at night?	(2f)
	Some children will point out that it makes it easier for George to hide and follow the man. Children working at greater depth within the expected standard may see that it adds to the atmosphere – it makes it more scary.	
3	What story did George make up about the tall man? Why did he do this?	(2d)
	All children should realise that George was pretending to himself that the man was a jewel thief. Children working at greater depth within the expected standard may be able to explain that this was to make it more exciting/real for himself.	
4	George had a toy truncheon with him. Why do you think he brought it?	(2d)
	Children working towards the expected standard may suggest that he can use it to protect himself. Some children might also explain that it helps him play the role, referring to the point in the text "pretending to himself that there might be great danger from a fierce thief!"	
5	Write T (true) or F (false) next to each statement about the story.	(2b)
	Children working at the expected standard should be able to answer this question correctly. Children working towards the expected standard may incorrectly identify some of the statements.	
6	<i>"Be careful now</i> , creep <i>round the corner …</i> " Why do you think the author chooses the word <i>"creep</i> " instead of <i>"walk</i> "?	(2g)
	Some children may say that it sounds like the way George is moving but without being able to explain why. Most children will add that it sounds as if he is moving quietly or keeping his head down. They may also see that it adds to the atmosphere by adding suspense and a sense that what George is doing is unusual.	
7	Choose <i>two</i> more verbs in the story that you think describe the action well.	(2g)
	Children working towards the expected standard may choose words that are not verbs, or may need to be reminded that verbs are " <i>doing words</i> ". Most children should be able to choose two colourful verbs. Some children working at greater depth within the expected standard may also be able to say why they have chosen them.	
8	What do you think will happen next? Why?	(2e)
	Most children will be able to suggest something. Children working at greater depth within the expected standard will have noticed the author has hinted in the text that there is someone following George himself, and will build this into what they write.	

The man came along. He was a tall, stooping fellow, wearing a hat, and carrying a bag. Good! Suppose there were stolen jewels in that bag! George would trail him right to his home, and he would then know where this supposed robber lived! It seemed very real somehow, not pretence. The night was dark, the man came along without guessing that a boy was pressing himself into the shadows of a bush, and George suddenly found his heart beginning to thump. The man passed. Now to follow him without being seen. If he spotted George, then George had failed. But George was certain he could shadow the man right back to his house without once being seen. He came out from the bush and began to follow the man, keeping well into the darkness of the trees that lined the road. Down the road to the corner. Round the corner. Be careful now, *creep* round the corner, in case the man knows he is being followed!

George crept cautiously, his rubber truncheon in his hand, pretending to himself that there might be great danger from a fierce thief!

He heaved a sigh of relief. There was the man, half-way down the road. George trotted on after him. Look behind you, George, as well as in front. Quick, George, look behind you! But George didn't look behind him. He only looked in front, and followed the man steadily. Once, when he stopped to tie his shoelace, George darted into a nearby gate, afraid that the man might turn and see him.

He crept out after half a minute, and saw the man walking on again, swinging his bag. After him went George, deciding to get a little nearer, so that he could see exactly where the man lived when he went into his house.



Namo	Class	Dato:
Nume.	Cluss.	Dule.

Read the text, then answer the questions.

1 How do you think George is feeling at the beginning of this story? How do you know that?

2	Why	is	this	storv	set	at	night?
_	••••			500.9	200	~~	- grice

3 What story did George make up about the tall man? Why did he do this?

**4** George had a toy truncheon with him. Why do you think he brought it?

5 Write T (true) or F (false) next to each statement about the story.

The man was wearing a hat.	
George was carrying a bag.	
George looked behind him.	
The man stopped to tie his shoelace.	
George wanted to know where the man lived.	

**6** "Be careful now, creep round the corner ..." Why do you think the author chooses the word "creep" instead of "walk"?

7 Choose two more verbs in the story that you think describe the action well.

8	What	do	you	think	will	happen	next?	Why?
---	------	----	-----	-------	------	--------	-------	------

#### Assessment Task 4 FICTION

# The Goose Girl Gillian Cross

#### Teacher notes: The Goose Girl

Curriculum references: Years 3-4

Programme of study: Reading comprehension

Children should be taught to:

- develop positive attitudes to reading and understanding of what they read by:
  - listening to and discussing a wide range of fiction, poetry, plays, non-fiction and reference books or textbooks
  - increasing their familiarity with a wide range of books, including fairy stories, myths and legends, and retelling some of these orally

- identifying themes and conventions in a wide range of books
- understand what they read, in books they can read independently, by:
  - drawing inferences such as inferring characters' feelings, thoughts and motives from their actions, and justifying inferences with evidence
  - predicting what might happen from details stated and implied
  - identifying how language, structure and presentation contribute to meaning.

#### Running the task

- Tell the children they are going to be working on a story called *The Goose Girl* by Gillian Cross. This is a challenging text for Year 3. The task focuses on the children's understanding of the form rather than the language and structure, so read the text aloud to the children before they start on the task.
- Talk to the children about any unfamiliar vocabulary, e.g. "*filigree*" (ornamental work made of

gold or silver wire), "*broken-winded gelding*" (a male horse that cannot gallop for long).

- The children should underline any words they don't know so that you can help with these. This will also help in your assessment of reading, and could inform future teaching.
- Support children working towards the expected standard as suggested in the introduction to this book.

#### Assessment guidance

Use the list below to identify the content domains that the children are working on in this task.

Typically, children working at the expected standard will:

•	retrieve key details and quotations from fiction to demonstrate understanding of character, events and information	2b
	provide developed explanations for key information and events and for characters' actions and	
	motivations	2b
•	make developed inferences drawing on evidence from the text	2d
•	explain and justify inferences, providing evidence from the text to support reasoning	2d
•	make developed predictions that are securely rooted in the text	2e
•	identify/explain how the sequence of events in narrative fiction contributes to meaning as a whole	2f
•	make accurate and appropriate comparisons within texts.	2h

#### What to expect

1	What type of story is this? Tick the correct answer.	(2b)
	Most children should be able to identify this as a traditional tale.	
2	How do you know?	(2f)
	Some children may find this difficult to explain. Children working at greater depth within the expected standard will be able to identify one or two features, e.g. a magic creature (the talking horse), the setting long ago and far away, a princess as the main character, a dangerous journey.	
3	Why was the princess going on a journey? Tick the most accurate answer.	(2b)
	Most children will be able to select the most accurate answer from the choices. Some children working towards the expected standard may answer " <i>She was going away because her father had died</i> " since this is at the beginning of the text but without continuing to read to find the correct reason.	
4	How do you know that the queen is worried about what might happen to the princess on her journey?	(2d)
	Some children may answer based on their own feelings, e.g. the fact that she is a young girl travelling a long way. Children working at greater depth within the expected standard will note the reference to the queen giving the princess something to protect her on her travels or giving her the cloth with blood to protect her from evil.	
5	How do you think the princess felt about setting off on her journey?	(2d)
	The story tells us little about the characters' feelings. Children working at all levels may say that she is sad to leave her mother. Some children may elaborate on this and say she could be excited or worried about her new life and the journey, or proud of all her treasure. Their responses are likely to be based on how they themselves would feel.	
6	Read the following statements and tick whether they apply to the princess or the maid.	(2h)
	Most children working at the expected standard should be able to make comparisons within the text and select the correct part of the text to be able to answer this question correctly. Some children working towards the expected standard may confuse which character carried the gold cup.	
7	Why do you think Falada was the "greatest treasure"?	(2b)
	Children working towards the expected standard will state that he was a talking horse. Children working at greater depth within the expected standard should be able to explain that this is a very rare creature. Also, he is able to do more than just carry the princess – he can keep her company too.	
8	Do you think they will have an easy journey? Explain your answer.	(2e)
	Most children will know that, as this is the start of the story, things have to happen! Children working at greater depth within the expected standard may also refer to the themes of the genre – that there are certain possibilities for the way that the story develops, possibly involving magic.	

Cross
Gillian
by (
retold
Girl
Goose
The
rom

Once there was a princess whose father was dead. She was promised in marriage to a king's son in a distant country but she stayed in her mother's house until she was old enough to be a wife.

While she was growing up, her mother, the queen, collected a great store of treasure to go with her. There were rubies and diamonds and sapphires; necklaces of river pearls and goblets of golden filigree; rolls of Chinese silk and carpets from the desert. But the greatest treasure of all was a horse called Falada. He was a handsome and noble horse, and when the time was right, he could speak.

At last, the princess was old enough to leave and travel to her husband's country. Before she went, her mother called her in. "I've given you many treasures to take with you," the old queen said. "But before you leave I'm going to give you one more thing, to protect you on your travels."

She called to her maid in waiting.

'Bring me α white linen cloth."

The maid brought the cloth and the queen took a needle and pricked her own finger until it bled. Holding her hand over the linen cloth, she let the blood drip, so that the white cloth was stained with three red drops. "Keep this safe," she said to her daughter, "and nothing evil will be able to touch you."

The princess took the cloth and hid it inside the front of her dress. Then she put on a rich travelling cloak and covered her face with a silk veil.

"Put on *your* cloak too," the queen said to her maid. "You're going with my daughter, to be her companion and carry her gold cup." The maid put on her rough woollen cloak and her shabby white veil and followed the princess down to the courtyard. There was a train of packhorses waiting there, loaded with treasure. And beside them was Falada, saddled up for the princess to ride. "Fetch another horse for my maid," the queen called to the stable boys. "She's going to travel with the princess." The stable boys thought it was a pity to send away another good horse, so they fetched a bony, broken-winded gelding from the stables and gave him to the maid.

	Name:	Class:	Date:
Re	ead the text, then answer the questions.		
1	What type of story is this? Tick the correct answer.		
	an adventure story 🛛 science fiction 🖾 a trac	ditional tale 🛛	
2	How do you know?		
3	Why was the princess going on a journey? Tick the most accur	ate answer.	
	She was going away so that she was safe. $\hfill \Box$		
	She was going away because her father had died. $\hfill \square$		
	She was going away to get married.		
4	How do you know that the queen is worried about what might ha	open to the princes	ss on her journey?

- **5** How do you think the princess felt about setting off on her journey?
- **6** Read the following statements and tick whether they apply to the princess or the maid.

	Princess	Maid
She hid the cloth in her dress.		
She was dressed in a woollen cloak with a white veil.		
She carried the gold cup.		
She was going to look after her companion.		
She rode a good horse.		

- 7 Why do you think Falada was "the greatest treasure"?
- **8** Do you think they will have an easy journey? Explain your answer. Yes  $\Box$  No  $\Box$

# Assessment Task 5 NON-FICTION

# All About Owls

### Teacher notes: All About Owls

Curriculum references: Years 3-4

Programme of study: Reading comprehension

Children should be taught to:

- develop positive attitudes to reading and understanding of what they read by:
  - listening to and discussing a wide range of fiction, poetry, plays, non-fiction and reference books or textbooks
  - reading books that are structured in different ways and reading for a range of purposes

- understand what they read, in books they can read independently, by:
  - checking that the text makes sense to them, discussing their understanding and explaining the meaning of words in context
  - asking questions to improve their understanding of a text
  - predicting what might happen from details stated and implied
  - identifying how language, structure and presentation contribute to meaning
- retrieve and record information from non-fiction.

# Running the task

- This task assesses understanding of the structure and navigation of websites and the ability to select and retrieve information from text.
- Check that the children are familiar with the technical vocabulary, e.g. "prey", "species", "rainforest", "tundra". Do not discuss the meaning of the word "nocturnal" since this is the subject of one of the questions. They may have encountered some of these words before in other areas. This will support all of the children and will enable you to make links with other curriculum areas.
- Encourage the children to read the text. Ask them to underline any further words they do not know and explain these after they have read it. Support children who are working towards the expected standard in writing skills or reading, as suggested in the introduction to this book.
- Ensure before beginning the questions that the children understand that they should only use one word to answer question 5.

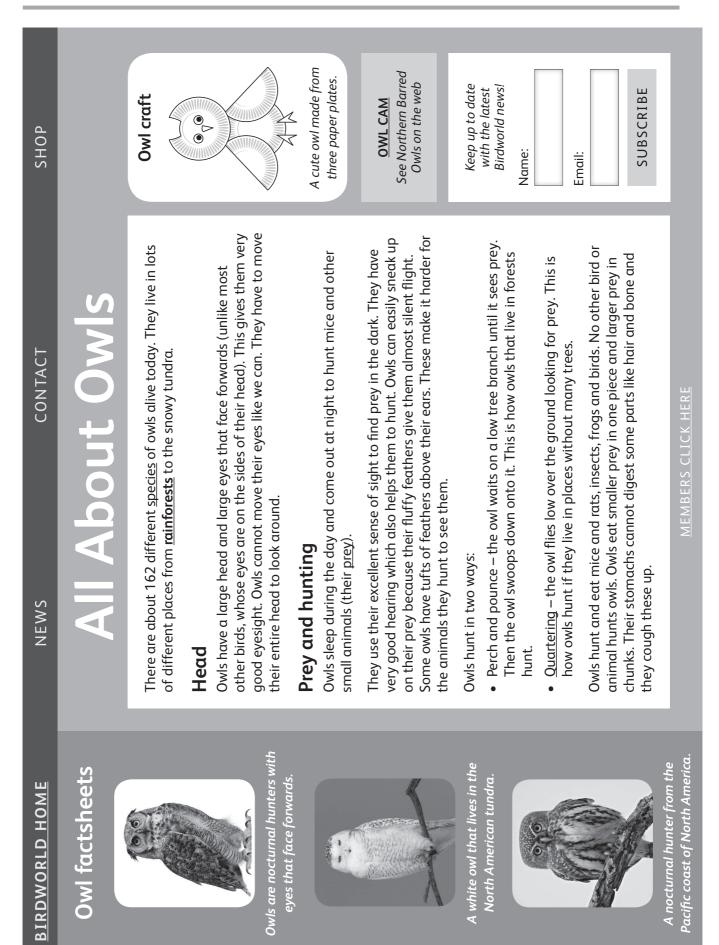
# Assessment guidance

Use the list below to identify the content domains that the children are working on in this task.

Typically, children working at the expected standard will:	
<ul> <li>show an understanding of the meaning of vocabulary in context</li> </ul>	2α
<ul> <li>retrieve key details and quotations from fiction and non-fiction to demonstrate understanding</li> </ul>	
of character, events and information	2b
• provide developed explanations for key information and events and for characters' actions and	
motivations	2b
<ul> <li>make developed predictions that are securely rooted in the text.</li> </ul>	2e

# What to expect

1	How do you know this is α website?	(2b)
	Most children will recognise this as a web page from a website. Children working at greater depth within the expected standard may be able to indicate several features that support this, e.g. site membership, hyperlinks, navigation bars, etc.	
2	How many different sorts of owls are there?	(2b)
	Most children should be able to select this reliably – about 162 species.	
3	What do owls eat?	(2b)
	Children working towards the expected standard may say " <i>mice and other small animals</i> ", as listed earlier in the text. Children working at the expected standard may read further down the page and find other prey such as frogs and insects.	
4	Why do owls fly so silently?	(2b)
	Children working towards the expected standard may identify the " <i>fluffy feathers</i> " that give owls silent flight. Children working at the expected standard may add that owls need to be silent to hunt successfully.	
5	Find and copy one word that tells the reader that owls hunt at night.	(2α)
	Children working at the expected standard should be able to select the correct word to answer this question. Those children working towards the expected standard may be unable to answer this question or may incorrectly offer more than one word.	
6	What link would you click on to find out about how to make an owl?	(2α)
	Most children should answer that you would click on the "Owl craft" link.	
7	What do you think might happen if you clicked on the "Owl cam" link? Tick the best choice.	(2e)
	Most children should have a reasonable understanding of a webcam to answer this question correctly.	
8	Can you think of any other pages this website might have?	(2e)
	Most children are likely to say that it might have other pages about owls. Children working at greater depth within the expected standard might also point out that there is a " <i>BIRDWORLD HOME</i> " button at the top of the screen, which suggests that this is part of a site on birds in general, not just owls.	



148 Cracking Comprehension Year 3 Teaching and Assessment Guide © Rising Stars UK Ltd 2019 You may photocopy this page

Name:	Class:	Date:	
Read the text, then answer the questions.			

1 How do you know this is a website?

2 How many different sorts of owls are there?

3 What do owls eat?

4 Why do owls fly so silently?

**5** Find and copy one word that tells the reader that owls hunt at night.

6 What link would you click on to find out about how to make an owl?

7 What do you think might happen if you clicked on the "Owl cam" link? Tick the best choice.

You would return to the Birdworld home page.IYou would see other facts about owls.IYou would see some Northern Barred Owls live.IYou could find out about the way they hunt.I

8 Can you think of any other pages this website might have?

# Assessment Task 6 NON-FICTION

# **The Skeleton**

### Teacher notes: The Skeleton

Curriculum references: Years 3-4

Programme of study: Reading comprehension

Children should be taught to:

- develop positive attitudes to reading and an understanding of what they read by:
  - listening to and discussing a wide range of fiction, poetry, plays, non-fiction and reference books or textbooks
  - reading books that are structured in different ways and reading for a range of purposes

- understand what they read, in books they can read independently, by:
  - checking that the text makes sense to them, discussing their understanding and explaining the meaning of words in context
  - asking questions to improve their understanding of a text
  - drawing inferences such as inferring characters' feelings, thoughts and motives from their actions, and justifying inferences with evidence
  - identifying main ideas drawn from more than one paragraph and summarising these
- retrieve and record information from non-fiction.

# Running the task

- Ask the children to look at the text and discuss in pairs what they think it is about.
- Ask them to say what type of text this is, and how they know.
- Look at the information and the pictures. Explain that each bone has a common name and a scientific name, and both are shown. Read the section of text with the children following it themselves.
- Point out to the children how "the skeletal system" is another way of saying "the skeleton". Discuss any other unfamiliar words, such as "rigid".

# • Ask the children to complete the questions.

- Circulate and help where necessary.
- As a plenary, ask the class to try to read the scientific names. Once they have done this, they could play a short quiz with a partner, with one child saying the scientific name and the other child finding the common name.

# Assessment guidance

Use the list below to identify the content domains that the children are working on in this task. Typically, children working at the expected standard will:

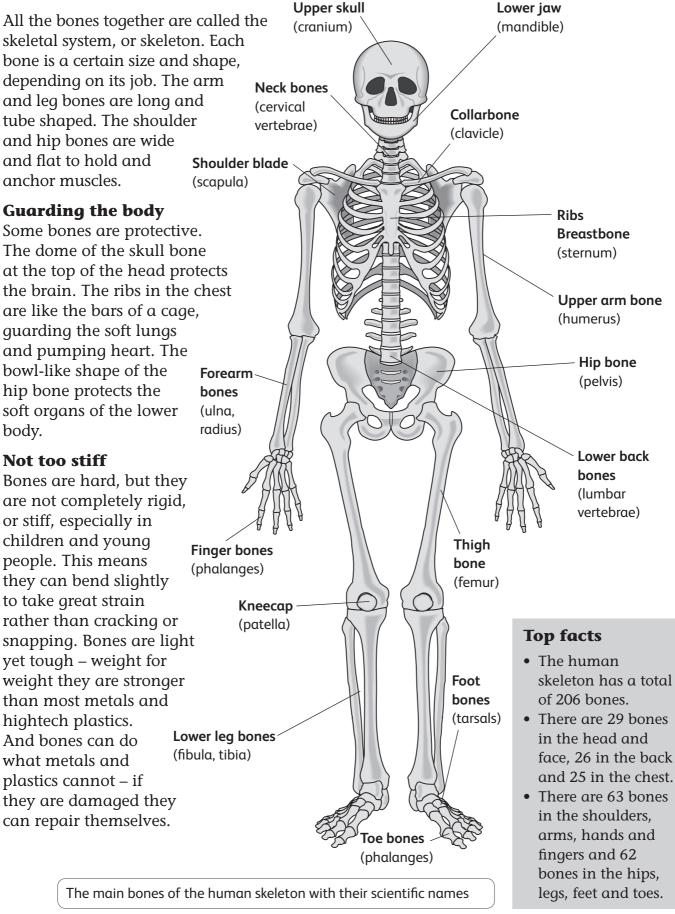
 show an understanding of the meaning of vocabulary in context
 retrieve key details and quotations from fiction and non-fiction to demonstrate understanding of character, events and information
 accurately and selectively summarise main ideas, events, characters and information in fiction and non-fiction texts
 make developed inferences drawing on evidence from the text
 make accurate and appropriate comparisons within texts.
 2h

# What to expect

1	What are all the bones inside a body called?	(2b)
	All children should be able to answer this question easily using the first few lines of text.	
2	Match the bones with what they guard.	(2b)
	Children working at the expected standard should find this question straightforward to answer. Those working at greater depth within the expected standard may use their own general knowledge to answer this question. Those working towards the expected standard should be able to answer this question correctly using the text as support.	
3	Why do you think it is important to have bones protecting our organs?	(2d)
	Children working at the expected standard should answer this question correctly, understanding from the text that the bones are there to protect important organs. Those working towards the expected standard may simply restate the question – that they guard our organs – without demonstrating an understanding of the bones' function.	
4	How does the text say bones are different in children?	(2d)
	Children working towards the expected standard may not be able to answer this question clearly and may state that "bones are not completely stiff" without showing an understanding that in children bones are less stiff or more flexible. Children working at the expected standard may also struggle to answer this question clearly without simply rewriting words from the text. They may need to be reminded to answer in their own words. Children working at greater depth within the expected standard should be able to answer this question correctly.	
5	Name two ways that bones are different to metals and plastics.	(2h)
	This question requires the children to understand the comparison of bones and metals/plastics from the text. Most children should be able to attempt this question but those working towards the expected standard may select the incorrect part of the text to answer this question.	
6	Find and copy one word that tells us that bones are strong.	(2a)
	Most children should be able to answer this question. Some children working towards the expected standard may choose the word "rigid" demonstrating a lack of understanding of this word.	
7	Draw lines to match the following new information to the section in which you would expect it to be found.	(2c)
	Most children working at the expected standard should be able to answer this question. They may need to use a process of elimination to match the answers. Those working towards the expected	

standard may find this question too challenging to answer correctly.

# **The Skeleton**



Name:	Class:	Date:

Read the text, then answer the questions.

1 What are all the bones together called?

### These questions are about the section "Guarding the body".

- 2 Draw lines to match the bones with what they guard.
  - ribs lower body organs
  - skull bone lungs and heart
  - hip bone brain
- 3 Why do you think it is important to have bones guarding our organs?

### These questions are about the section "Not too stiff".

- 4 How does the text say bones are different in children?
- 5 Name two ways that bones are different to metals and plastics.
- 6 Find and copy one word that tells us that bones are strong.

### This question is about the whole text.

**7** Draw lines to match the following new information to the section in which you would expect it to be found.

Bones are less dense than most metals.	Top Facts
There are three tiny bones in each human ear.	Not too stiff
Bones in the spine protect the spinal cord.	The Skeleton
Our teeth form part of our skeleton system but are not actually bones.	Guarding the body

# Assessment Task 7 NON-FICTION

# Vikings in Britain

# Teacher notes: Vikings in Britain

Curriculum references: Years 3-4

Programme of study: Reading comprehension

Children should be taught to:

- develop positive attitudes to reading and understanding of what they read by:
  - reading books that are structured in different ways and reading for a range of purposes

### Running the task

- The children do not need to know anything about the Vikings in order to complete this task. Explain that they are going to read about the Vikings and that they should only use the information in the text to answer the questions.
- There is some vocabulary in the text that the children may not be familiar with and should be

# Assessment guidance

- understand what they read, in books they can read independently, by:
  - identifying main ideas drawn from more than one paragraph and summarising these
  - identifying how language, structure and presentation contribute to meaning
- retrieve and record information from non-fiction.

discussed before the task begins, e.g. "*wattle*", "*daub*" and "*freeman*".

• Support children working towards the expected standard in writing skills or reading, as suggested in the introduction to this book.

Use the list below to identify the content domains that the children are working on in this task.

Typically, children working at the expected standard will:

	retrieve key details and quotations from fiction and non-fiction to demonstrate understanding	
	of character, events and information	2b
	provide developed explanations for key information and events and for characters' actions and	
	motivations	2b
	accurately and selectively summarise main ideas, events, characters and information in fiction	
	and non-fiction texts	2c
•	identify/explain how information in non-fiction is related and contributes to meaning as a whole	2f
	make accurate and appropriate comparisons within texts.	2h

# What to expect

	•	
1	Answer True, False or Don't know. Use information from this text only.	(2b)
	Some children may make some assumptions, particularly ticking <i>False</i> instead of <i>Don't know</i> . Most children should be accurate with all these answers.	
2	When did people have feasts?	(2b)
	Most children should be able to answer this question.	
3	What two things does the text say that Vikings did when they came to Britain? Tick <i>two</i> .	(2b)
	Most children working at the expected standard should be able to answer this question correctly. Those children working towards the expected standard may tick other options; however, with guidance to use the first paragraph, they should then answer this question correctly.	
4	What were children's lives like in Viking times?	(2b)
	Most children should recognise that children had to help their parents and that there were no schools. Children working at greater depth within the expected standard should also recognise that helping their parents meant real work, e.g. on the farm, or that any learning they did was from the people they worked with.	
5	Draw lines to match the person to their role in a Viking community.	(2b)
	Most children should be able to select the correct parts of the text to answer this correctly.	
6	What heading would you give to the first paragraph?	(2c)
	Most children are likely to reflect the content of the paragraph, e.g. "Where the Vikings came from". Children working at greater depth within the expected standard may also recognise that the first paragraph is an introduction giving background about the Vikings and head it, e.g. "Who were the Vikings?" or even just "Introduction".	
7	How does the picture help you understand life in Viking times?	(2f)
	Most children may say that it is easier to understand what a house was like from the picture than the text. Children working at the expected standard and those working at greater depth within the expected standard should recognise that it works with the text, e.g. <i>"it helps you understand some of the words"</i> or <i>"it's easier to follow the description of life in Viking times with the picture as well"</i> .	
8	How were the homes on farms different to those in Viking towns?	(2h)
	All children should see in the text that houses in towns were made only of wood whereas on farms they were made of wood, stone and turf. Children working at greater depth within the expected standard may infer from the text that the houses in town were closer together, whereas on farms they had room for animals. They may also suggest that the houses were smaller in towns.	

# Vikings in Britain

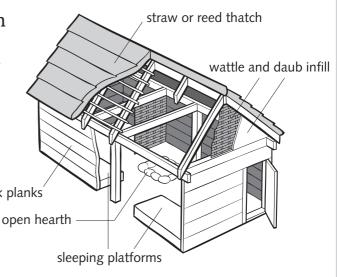
Vikings came to Britain from northern Europe over a thousand years ago. Some came to fight and take things home. Some stayed and made their homes in Britain. They mostly settled in the north of Scotland and the east of England.

# **Viking homes**

Most people lived on farms. Their homes were built from wood, stone and turf. The roofs were made of thatch or turf. The houses were rectangular and had just one room where people ate, cooked, worked, told stories and slept. They kept animals in different buildings.

Some people lived in towns. One important town was Jorvik, which is now known as York. Houses in Jorvik were built close together in narrow streets. The houses were made from wood. They were smaller than the houses on farms.

**Men, women and children** oak planks<sup>2</sup> Men worked on farms, or as craftsmen or traders. They used boats for fishing or travelling. Sometimes men had to fight to protect their family or village.



Women looked after the children, cooked and cleaned. They also helped on the farm, milked the cows and made cheese. They made cloth and used it to make clothes for their family.

Children had to help their parents. There were no schools. Children learnt from the people they worked with.

# Community

The local freemen met together regularly to talk about laws and to decide punishments for criminals.

People had feasts to celebrate events like weddings, funerals and religious festivals. They invited lots of people, and the feast could last for days!

	-	<b>_</b>
Name:	Class:	Date:

Read the text, then answer the questions.

1 Answer True, False or Don't know. Use information from this text only.

	True	False	Don't know
The Vikings called York 'Jorvik'.			
Children learnt to read and write.			
All the Vikings settled in east England or the north of Scotland.			
Viking houses were square in shape.			

**2** When did people have feasts?

**3** What two things does the text say that Vikings did when they came to Britain? Tick **two**.

They made homes and stayed in Britain.	They helped teach the children.	
Men cooked and cleaned.	They fought and took things home.	

**4** What were children's lives like in Viking times?

**5** Draw lines to match the person to their role in a Viking community.

men made cloth

women helped their parents

children fished

local freemen decided punishments

6 What heading would you give to the first paragraph?

7 How does the picture help you understand life in Viking times?

8 How were the homes on farms different to those in Viking towns?

# Assessment Task 8 POETRY

# Greedy Dog James Hurley

### Teacher notes: Greedy Dog

Curriculum references: Years 3-4

Programme of study: Reading comprehension

Children should be taught to:

- develop positive attitudes to reading and an understanding of what they read by:
  - listening to and discussing a wide range of fiction, poetry, plays, non-fiction and reference books or textbooks
  - identifying themes and conventions in a wide range of books
  - preparing poems and playscripts to read aloud and to perform, showing understanding through intonation, tone, volume and action

- understand what they read, in books they can read independently, by:
  - checking that the text makes sense to them, discussing their understanding and explaining the meaning of words in context
  - drawing inferences such as inferring characters' feelings, thoughts and motives from their actions, and justifying inferences with evidence
  - identifying main ideas drawn from more than one paragraph and summarising these
  - identifying how language, structure and presentation contribute to meaning
- participate in discussion about both books that are read to them and those they can read for themselves, taking turns and listening to what others say.

# Running the task

- Display the poem on the whiteboard and ask the children to follow the words as you read it. Ask the children to reread the poem in pairs.
- Ask the children to discuss what type of poem this is (rhyming) and take feedback. Discuss which words rhyme (the last word of each line) and why (to add interest). Discuss how the final lines are different (they don't rhyme) and why this might be (to demonstrate how strange these foods are to dislike).
- Give pairs of children two rhyming lines. Ask them to learn the lines and decide how to perform these

to the class. Ask several pairs to perform their lines, encouraging expression and clear intonation.

- Direct the children to questions 4 and 6 and remind them to answer each of these with a single word.
- Ask the children to complete the questions and circulate while they complete the task.
- As a plenary, ask the children to devise their own ending to the poem instead of the final three lines. Discuss their ideas and how they might change the effect of the poem.

# Assessment guidance

Use the list below to identify the content domains that the children are working on in this task.

Typically, children working at the expected standard will:2a• show an understanding of the meaning of vocabulary in context2a• retrieve key details and quotations from fiction and non-fiction to demonstrate understanding<br/>of character, events and information2b• provide developed explanations for key information and events and for characters' actions and motivations2b• accurately and selectively summarise main ideas, events, characters and information in fiction<br/>and non-fiction texts2c• make developed inferences drawing on evidence from the text2d• explain and justify inferences, providing evidence from the text to support reasoning.2d

# What to expect

1	Tick all the things from the list below that are named in the poem as something Greedy Dog likes to eat.	(2b)
	Most children should be able to answer this question correctly. Some children working at the expected standard may point out that Greedy Dog eats anything and, therefore, may tick ' <i>newspapers</i> ' as an acceptable answer. However, those working at greater depth within the expected standard should be able to explain that " <i>newspapers</i> " should not be ticked because the question clearly states that the things Greedy Dog likes to eat should be named in the poem.	
2	"And relishes hot buttered toast"	(2a)
	What word could the author have used instead of "relishes"?	
	This is a challenging question for children to answer clearly. Many children will be able to suggest that the dog ' <i>likes</i> ' toast, using their understanding of the poem, without demonstrating a clear understanding of the word ' <i>relishes</i> ' itself. Children working at greater depth within the expected standard should be able to provide a suitable synonym.	
3	Why does the poem say that you should hide your chocolates?	(2b)
	Children working at the expected standard will demonstrate an understanding of the text by clearly stating that Greedy Dog will steal the chocolates. Children working towards the expected standard may simply state that Greedy Dog will ' <i>eat them</i> '. This demonstrates an understanding of the poem but does not demonstrate an explanation of the specific line.	
4	Find and copy one word that tells the reader they should hide their socks.	(2a)
	Most children working at the expected standard and those working at greater depth within the expected standard should be able to select the correct word from the poem, using the rest of the question to find the correct word within the line. Those children working towards the expected standard may offer more than a single word or may offer the word ' <i>carefully</i> '.	
5	"Leave some soup without a lid	(2d)
	And you'll wish you never did."	
	Explain why you think you might wish this.	
	Most children should be able to use their understanding of the poem to explain that, without a lid, Greedy Dog may eat the soup.	
6	Find and copy one word that tells us Greedy Dog is eating noisily and quickly.	(2a)
	Children working at greater depth within the expected standard will be easily able to answer this question. Those working at the expected standard should be able to find the word within the poem to answer correctly. Those working towards the expected standard may struggle to select the correct word.	
7	Suggest a different title that the author could have used for the poem.	(2c)
	Most children should be able to suggest a suitable alternative title that encompasses the theme of the poem.	

# **Greedy Dog by James Hurley**

This dog will eat anything Apple cores and bacon fat, Milk you poured out for the cat, He likes the string that ties the roast And relishes hot buttered toast. Hide your chocolates! He's a thief, He'll even eat your handkerchief. And if you don't like sudden shocks, Carefully conceal your socks. Leave some soup without a lid And you'll wish you never did. When you think he must be full, You'll find him gobbling bits of wool, Orange peel or paper bags, Dusters and old cleaning rags.

This dog will eat anything, Except for mushrooms and cucumber.

Now what is wrong with those, I wonder.



Name:	Class:	Date:
	0.000	

Read the text, then answer the questions.

1 Tick all the things from the list below that are named in the poem as something Greedy Dog likes to eat.

orange peel	cleaning rags	
cucumber	toast	
cat milk	newspapers	

**2** "And relishes hot buttered toast"

What word could the author have used instead of "relishes"?

3 Why does the poem say that you should hide your chocolates?

4 Find and copy one word that tells the reader they should hide their socks.

5 "Leave some soup without a lid And you'll wish you never did."

Explain why you think you might wish this.

6 Find and copy one word that tells us Greedy Dog is eating noisily and quickly.

**<sup>7</sup>** Suggest a different title that the author could have used for the poem.

# Assessment Task 9 POETRY

# A Visit to Yalding

### Teacher notes: A Visit to Yalding

Curriculum references: Years 3-4

Programme of study: Reading comprehension

Children should be taught to:

- develop positive attitudes to reading and understanding of what they read by:
  - listening to and discussing a wide range of fiction, poetry, plays, non-fiction and reference books or textbooks
  - preparing poems and playscripts to read aloud and to perform, showing understanding through intonation, tone, volume and action
  - discussing words and phrases that capture the reader's interest and imagination
  - recognising some different forms of poetry [for example, free verse, narrative poetry]

- understand what they read, in books they can read independently, by:
  - checking that the text makes sense to them, discussing their understanding and explaining the meaning of words in context
  - asking questions to improve their understanding of a text
  - drawing inferences such as inferring characters' feelings, thoughts and motives from their actions, and justifying inferences with evidence
  - predicting what might happen from details stated and implied
  - identifying main ideas drawn from more than one paragraph and summarising these
- participate in discussion about both books that are read to them and those they can read for themselves, taking turns and listening to what others say.

### Running the task

- Explain that this is the first part of a longer poem. The poem has six verses, but this extract only uses four. Explain that it is a poem by John Coldwell about a family outing. You may want to check the children's understanding of some of the vocabulary, e.g. "*locks*", "*upholstery*", "*saturated*" and "*ebb*". Spend some time talking about these words, e.g. asking the children to compose sentences verbally that contain these words.
- Read out the poem first, and then give the children the opportunity to read it to themselves before embarking on the task.
- Circulate while the children complete the task, deploying any additional adults to support those who need it or offer additional challenge to those capable of moving beyond the levels described.
- As a plenary, you may wish to encourage the children to speculate what could have happened next to make things worse for the boy.

# Assessment guidance

Use the list below to identify the content domains that the children are working on in this task.

 Typically, children working at the expected standard will:
 2a

 • show an understanding of the meaning of vocabulary in context
 2a

 • retrieve key details and quotations from fiction and non-fiction to demonstrate understanding of character, events and information
 2b

 • provide developed explanations for key information and events and for characters' actions and motivations
 2b

 • identify/explain how the sequence of events in narrative fiction contributes to meaning as a whole
 2f

 • identify/explain how the choice of language enhances the meaning of texts.
 2g

# What to expect

1	Draw lines to match the character with their actions from the poem.	(2b)
	Children working at all levels should be able to correctly match the characters with their actions.	
2	At the end of the second verse, was the brother really being helpful? What was he doing?	(2b)
	Most children should understand that the brother is teasing the boy, and not trying to help. Children working at greater depth within the expected standard are more likely to express the impact of his actions on the boy.	
3	In verse 3, why is the phrase "What's it like to" repeated three times?	(2g)
	Most children should understand this is because the brother is laughing at the boy so hard he can't finish the sentence. Children working towards the expected standard might not understand this, even after the poem has been read to them, and so may give less sophisticated answers.	
4	<i>"Could my life ever <u>reach a lower ebb</u>?"</i> What is another way of saying the underlined phrase?	(2α)
	Most children should be able to select an appropriate phrase such as " <i>get worse</i> ", while children working at greater depth within the expected standard may attempt a more literary phrase, e.g. " <i>sink lower</i> ".	
5	In verse 4, how does the poet make you feel sorry for the boy?	(2f)
	Children working towards the expected standard may choose one simple explanation, e.g. " <i>the boy is wet</i> " or " <i>they are all laughing at him</i> ". Children working at greater depth within the expected standard should be able to explain that the sequence of events builds up – also that something worse is about to happen!	
6	The poet uses many words to remind the reader of water. Write the words that remind you of water, and explain why the writer has used them.	(2a)
	Most children should be able to identify most of the words, including " <i>ebb</i> " and the reference to the brother almost " <i>wetting himself</i> " and the boy being a " <i>drip</i> ". These children may also explain that the boy is wet so there is a lot of water, and that it is all the boy is thinking about. Children working towards the expected standard may have difficulty explaining the imagery, other than to explain that the family has been to the river.	
7	Embarrassing, funny, sad: which of these words do you think describes the overall effect of the poem? Explain your choice.	(2f)
	Most children will find the poem embarrassing or funny, depending on whether they sympathise with the boy or his family. Children working towards the expected standard will give more general reasons for their answer, while those working at greater depth within the expected standard may pick specific explanations, e.g. <i>"He must have felt everyone was against him and that would make the situation worse."</i>	

# From A Visit to Yalding by John Coldwell

3.

- 1. We went to Yalding to look at the locks To watch the water go up and down. My brother found a dead sparrow to take home, My mum found a ten pence piece, My dad picked up a tin can that an animal might hurt itself on And I -I fell in the river. 2. I dripped back to the car. "You're not getting into the car like that," said Dad. "You'll ruin the upholstery." "You're not getting into the car like that." said Mum. "You'll catch your death of cold. Get those wet things off." I took off my squelchy shoes. I took off my soggy socks. And stopped. "And the rest", said Mum. "No, Mum, please." "No one will see." "I can see," said my brother. "No lookina." Off came the saturated shorts. "I can see his pants. I can see his pants. And they're wet," said my brother helpfully.
- "They're not." "Get them off", said Mum. "No, Mum, please." "Don't be such a big drip. Are you going to take them off Or shall I?" Down came the pants. I sat on a towel in the car next to my brother who was near wetting himself with laughter. "What's it like to "What's it like to "What's it like to have no pants?"
- 4. "Mum. Tell him. Mum? Dad? Stop laughing. It's not funny." "You're right," said Dad. There was a moment's silence Then they all started laughing again. Could my life ever reach a lower ebb? It did at the end of our road.



Name:	Class:	Date:	

Read the text, then answer the questions.

**1** Draw lines to match the character with their action from the poem.

the boy	picked up a tin can
Mum	found some money
Dad	fell in the river
brother	found a dead bird

2 At the end of the second verse, was the brother really being helpful? What was he doing?

3 In verse 3, why is the phrase "What's it like to" repeated three times?

4 "Could my life ever reach a lower ebb?" What is another way of saying the underlined phrase?

5 In verse 4, how does the poet make you feel sorry for the boy?

**6** The poet uses many words to remind the reader of water. Write the words that remind you of water, and explain why the writer has used them.

**7** Embarrassing, funny, sad. Which of these words do you think describes the overall effect of the poem? Explain your choice.

# Answers

### Fiction

### Assessment Task 1

- 1 Because she wanted to ask for her neighbour's help.
- 2 Dad is in bed with a cold and noise will disturb him. He will not recover as quickly if he is woken.
- 3 He is always smiling and never seems to be in a bad mood.
- 4 Daniel is older than Kitty.
- 5 Either Daniel or Kitty.
- 6 Mum went out: 2 The children started to make a den: 3 Baby Tom became hot and started to whimper: 4 William came to play: 1 Baby Tom cried: 5
- 7 Crying would wake Dad, and they might get into trouble with Mum.
- 8 Mum would be cross and ask what happened. She would be worried for the baby and comfort him.

### Assessment Task 2

- 1 relaxed; sleepy
- 2 In an apple tree/on a branch. Evidence: "against the trunk of the apple tree"; "leaned his arm against the thick branch"; "Penguin, who was draped across the same branch".
- 3 Penguin is purring as he sleeps: T The story is set on a Sunday in August: F Alfie had just eaten his lunch: T Penguin was overweight: T Alfie used the branch as a swing: F
- 4 (He) licked Alfie's elbow (lovingly).
- 5 *"Penguin never fell."*/He had never fallen./He had perfect balance.
- 6 persuade
- 7 He thought it might help Penguin act like a circus performer.
- 8 No, he is not pleased. Evidence: "stared sternly"; "would result in severe scratches".

### Assessment Task 3

- 1 Scared/afraid/frightened/excited. "George suddenly found his heart beginning to thump."
- 2 It makes it more scary.

- 3 George pretended that the man was a jewel thief. It made it more exciting/scary.
- 4 To protect himself, and to help him pretend.
- 5 The man was wearing a hat: T. George was carrying a bag: F George looked behind him: F The man stopped to tie his shoelace: T. George wanted to know where the man lived: T
- 6 The word "*creep*" tells us he is moving very quietly. It adds to the suspense.
- 7 Examples: "stooping" (used as an adjective); "pressing"; "thump".
- 8 There is someone following George himself.

### Assessment Task 4

- 1 a traditional tale
- 2 A magical creature (the talking horse); the setting long ago and far away; royalty as the main characters; a dangerous journey.
- 3 She was going away to get married.
- 4 She gives her something to protect her from evil.
- 5 She may be sad to leave her mother; excited or worried about her new life; frightened of the journey; proud of all her treasure.
- 6 She hid the cloth in her dress: Princess She was dressed in a woollen cloak with a white veil: Maid She carried the gold cup: Maid She was going to look after her companion: Maid She rode a good horse: Princess
- 7 He could talk and keep her company. He was very rare.
- 8 They will have a difficult journey. It's the start of the story and therefore things will happen.

### Non-fiction

#### Assessment Task 5

- 1 This is a web page from a website. Features include site membership; hyperlinks; navigation bars, etc.
- 2 About 162 species.
- 3 Mice/rats/insects/frogs/birds.
- 4 They have fluffy feathers. They need to fly silently to hunt.

- 5 Nocturnal.
- 6 Owl craft.
- 7 You would see Northern Barred Owls live.
- 8 Accept reasonable answers, e.g. Pages on other birds, etc.

### Assessment Task 6

- 1 The skeleton or the skeletal system.
- 2 ribs lower body organs skull bone lungs and heart hip bone brain
- 3 They protect our soft organs, e.g. heart, from harm.
- 4 Children's bones are less stiff.
- 5 Bones are stronger; they can mend themselves.
- 6 tough
- 7 Bones are less dense than Top facts most metals

There are three tiny bones ANot too stiff in each human ear

Bones in the spine protect The skeleton the spinal cord.

Our teeth form part of our Guarding the body skeleton system but are not actually bones.

### Assessment Task 7

1		True	False	Don't know
	The Vikings called York "Jorvik".	~		
	Children learnt to read and write.			$\checkmark$
	All the Vikings settled in east England or the north of Scotland.		\$	
	Viking houses were square in shape.		1	

- 2 To celebrate weddings, funerals and religious festivals.
- 3 They made homes and stayed in Britain. They fought and took things home.
- 4 Children had to work as soon as they could, and they didn't go to school.

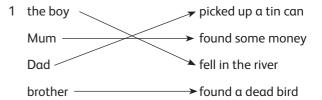
- 5 men made cloth women helped their parents children fished
- 6 "Introduction" or other appropriate answer.
- 7 It helps you imagine; it gives more detail.
- 8 Answers may include the following: the houses in Viking towns were made of wood, stone and turf; the houses in towns were closer together and smaller compared to those on farms. The houses on farms had animals.

### Poetry

### Assessment Task 8

- 1 orange peel; cat milk; cleaning rags; toast
- 2 *"enjoys greatly"/"loves"/"really likes"/"adores*" or an appropriate alternative synonym.
- 3 Otherwise Greedy Dog will steal them.
- 4 conceal
- 5 Greedy Dog may eat the soup if there is no lid on it.
- 6 gobbling
- 7 Accept suitable suggestions, e.g. "Hungry Dog", "The Thief", "Don't leave anything about!".

### Assessment Task 9



- 2 He wasn't being helpful; he was making the situation worse.
- 3 To show he couldn't finish the sentence because he was laughing so much.
- 4 Could my life ever get worse.
- 5 The poet shows that all of the boy's family are laughing at him. Even his parents can't stop, although they are trying to be sympathetic.
- 6 Answers may include "*wet*", "*squelchy*", "*soggy*", "*saturated*", "*drip*", "*wetting himself*". The word "*ebb*" also refers to water but children are unlikely to recognise this. It helps the reader feel how damp the writer feels.
- 7 Children may say "*embarrassing*" or "*funny*". They might empathise with the child and find the teasing a bit sad.

### **CONTENT DOMAIN COVERAGE**

**Teach and Practice** 

		Fiction																
Content domain	Unit 1		Unit 2		Unit 3		Un	Unit 4		Unit 5		Unit 6		it 7	Un	Unit 8		it 9
	Fantastic Mr Fox (Teaching text)	Who's a Clever Girl, Then? (Practice text)	Mr Majeika (Teaching text)	The Worst Witch (Practice text)	The Lost Happy Endings (Teaching text)	Clarice Bean – Utterly Me (Practice text)	Grandpa's Indian Summer (Teaching text)	The Man Whose Mother Was a Pirate (Practice text)	Kitten Rescue (Teaching text)	Fox Cub Danger (Practice text)	Theseus and the Minotaur (Teaching text)	Odysseus and the Trojan Horse (Practice text)	The Enchanted Wood (Teaching text)	The Minpins (Practice text)	Mountains (Teaching text)	Coasts (Practice text)	From Spawn to Frog (Teaching text)	From Spawn to Frog (Practice text)
2a give/explain the meaning of words in context	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
2b retrieve and record information/identify key details from fiction and non-fiction	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	5
2c summarise main ideas from more than one paragraph	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1
2d make inferences from the text/explain and justify inferences with evidence from the tex	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1				
2e predict what might happen from details stated and implied		1		1				1		1	1	1						
2f identify/explain how information/narrative content is related and contributes to meaning as a whole	1	~					1							1	1	1		1
2g identify/explain how meaning is enhanced through choice of words and phrases		1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1		1	1	1	1	1	1
2h make comparisons within the text					1				1							1		

														Ass	sess	men	nt To	ısks																																											
Non-fiction								Poetry					Fict	ion		Non-fiction			Poetry																																										
Uni	t 10	Uni	t 11	Ur	nit 12	Uni	Unit 13		Unit 13		Unit 13		Jnit 13		Unit 13		Unit 13		Unit 13		Unit 13		Unit 13		Unit 13		Unit 13		Unit 13		Unit 13		Unit 13		Unit 13		Unit 13		Unit 13		Unit 13		Unit 13		Unit 14		Unit 14		Unit 14		t 15	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	
The World (Teaching text)	The United Kingdom (Practice text)	Emergency Vehicles – Firefighters (Teaching text)	Emergency Vehicles – Police (Practice text)	Cornish Holiday Blog (Teaching text)	Ken's Summer Holidays on the Isle of Mull – Day 3 (Practice text)	Rosa Parks (Teaching text)	Mary Seacole (Practice text)	Walking with My Iguana (Teaching text)	A Big Surprise (Practice text)	Scissors (Teaching text)	New School (Practice text)	It's Not my Fault	A Cat Called Penguin	Go Ahead, Secret Seven	The Goose Girl	All About Owls	The Skeleton	Vikings in Britain	Greedy Dog	A Visit to Yalding																																									
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	~		1			1	1		1	1	2α																																								
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2b																																								
				1	1	1	1		1			1					1	1	1		2с																																								
1	1	5	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	~	1	1	1	1		1		1		2d																																								
									1	1		1		1	1	1					2e																																								
			\$		1			1	1		1			1	1			1		1	2f																																								
		1	1	1	1			1	1	1			1	1						1	2g																																								
	1	1	1		1										1		1	1			2h																																								

### **CONTENT DOMAINS**

Key Sta	ge 1 content domains							
1α	draw on knowledge of vocabulary to understand texts							
1b	identify/explain key aspects of fiction and non-fiction texts, such as characters, events, titles and information							
1c	identify and explain the sequence of events in texts							
1d	make inferences from the text							
1e	predict what might happen on the basis of what has been read so far							
Key Sta	ge 2 content domains							
2α	give/explain the meaning of words in context							
2b	retrieve and record information/identify key details from fiction and non-fiction							
2c	summarise main ideas from more than one paragraph							
2d	make inferences from the text/explain and justify inferences with evidence from the text							
2e	predict what might happen from details stated and implied							
2f	identify/explain how information/narrative content is related and contributes to meaning as a whole							
2g	identify/explain how meaning is enhanced through choice of words and phrases							
2h	make comparisons within the text							

Notes



Notes



Notes

#### Acknowledgements

The Publishers would like to thank the following for permission to reproduce copyright material.

#### Text acknowledgements

p8 Fantastic Mr Fox by Roald Dahl © The Roald Dahl Story Company Limited. Reproduced by permission of David Higham Associates; p12 Who's a Clever Girl, Then? by Rose Impey copyright © Rose Impey 1993 reproduced by kind permission of Rose Impey c/o Caroline Sheldon Literary Agency Ltd.; p16 Mr Majeika by Humphrey Carpenter, (Puffin Books, 2015) Copyright © Humphrey Carpenter, 1985. Audio used by permission of Cecily Ware Literary Agents; p20 The Worst Witch by Jill Murphy; p24 The Lost Happy Endings by Carol Ann Duffy. Published by Bloomsbury, 2008. Copyright © Carol Ann Duffy. Reproduced by permission of the author c/o Rogers, Coleridge & White Ltd., 20 Powis Mews, London W11 1JN; p28 Clarice Bean - Utterly Me by Lauren Child reproduced by permission of David Higham Associates; p32 Grandpa's Indian Summer reproduced by permission of David Higham Associates; p60 The Minpins by Roald Dahl © The Roald Dahl Story Company Limited. Reproduced by permission of David Higham Associates; p36 The Man Whose Mother Was a Pirate by Margaret Mahy, Orion Children's Book, an imprint of Hachette; p40 Animal Ark: Kitten Rescue by Lucy Daniels, Orchard Books, an imprint of Hachette; p44 Animal Art: Fox Club Danger by Lucy Daniels, Orchard Books, an imprint of Hachette; p52 Odysseus and the Trojan Horse by Damian Harvey, Franklin Watts, an imprint of Hachette; p56 The Enchanted Wood by Enid Blyton, Hachette Children's Group; p60 The Minpins by Roald Dahl, text copyright © 1991 by Felicity Dhal and the other Executors of the Estate of Roald Dahl. Used by permission of Viking Children's Books, an imprint of Penguin Young Readers Group, a division of Penguin Random House LLC. All rights reserved./ Penguin Books Ltd © The Roald Dahl Story Company Limited; p66 Mountains by Ruth Thomson, Wayland, an imprint of Hachette; p70 Coasts by Ruth Thomson, Wayland, an imprint of Hachette; p90 and p94 Ten Fire Engines and Emergency Vehicles by Chris Oxlade, Franklin Watts, an imprint of Hachette; p114 Walking with my Iguana by Brian Moses, Wayland, an imprint of Hachette; p118 A Big Surprise by Michaela Morgan, reproduced with the permission of the author; p122 'Scissors' from *Please Mrs Butler* by Allan Ahlberg (Puffin, 2013). Copyright © Allan Ahlberg, 1984; p126 *New School* by Kevin McCann, reproduced with permission of the author; p130 *It's Not My Fault* by Bel Mooney reproduced by permission of David Higham Associates; p134 A Cat Called Penguin by Holly Webb © Holly Webb, 2011. Reproduced with permission of Scholastic Ltd. All Rights Reserved; p138 Go Ahead, Secret Seven by Enid Blyton, Hodder Children's, an imprint of Hachette: p142 The Goose Girl by Gillian Cross Copyright 🛇 Gillian Cross 1998. Reproduced by permission of Lucas Alexander Whitely Ltd.; p158 Greedy Dog by James Hurley; p162 Å Visit to Yalding by John Coldwell.

#### Image acknowledgement

© p132 Oscar Scotellaro/iStockphoto; p148 Eric Isselee/iStockphoto (top), Francis Bosse/iStockphoto (middle), Johan Swanepoel/iStockphoto (bottom); p164 Neil Fensom/iStockphoto;

Every effort has been made to trace all copyright holders, but if any have been inadvertently overlooked, the Publishers will be pleased to make the necessary arrangements at the first opportunity.

Although every effort has been made to ensure that website addresses are correct at time of going to press, Rising Stars cannot be held responsible for the content of any website mentioned in this book. It is sometimes possible to find a relocated web page by typing in the address of the home page for a website in the URL window of your browser.

Hachette UK's policy is to use papers that are natural, renewable and recyclable products and made from wood grown in sustainable forests. The logging and manufacturing processes are expected to conform to the environmental regulations of the country of origin.

Orders: please contact Bookpoint Ltd, 130 Park Drive, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4SE. Telephone: (44) 01235 400555. Email primary@bookpoint.co.uk.

Lines are open from 9 a.m. to 5 p.m., Monday to Saturday, with a 24-hour message answering service. Visit our website at www.risingstars-uk.com for details of the full range of Rising Stars publications.

Online support and queries email: onlinesupport@risingstars-uk.com

#### ISBN: 978 1 5104 5259 6

Text, design and layout © 2019 Rising Stars UK Ltd First published in 2019 by Rising Stars UK Ltd Rising Stars UK Ltd, part of the Hodder Education Group, An Hachette UK Company Carmelite House 50 Victoria Embankment London EC4Y 0DZ www.risingstars-uk.com

Impression number 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 Year 2022 2021 2020 2019

All rights reserved. Apart from any use permitted under UK copyright law, the material in this publication is copyright and cannot be photocopied or otherwise produced in its entirety or copied onto acetate without permission. Electronic copying is not permitted. Permission is given to teachers to make copies of pages marked '© Rising Stars UK Ltd 2019. You may photocopy this page' for classroom distribution only, to pupils within their own school or educational institution. The material may not be copied in unlimited quantities, kept on behalf of others, distributed outside the purchasing institution, copied onwards, sold to third parties, or stored for future use in a retrieval system. This permission is subject to the payment of the purchase price of the book. If you wish to use the material in any way other than as specified you must apply in writing to the Publisher at the above address.

Authors: Kate Ruttle, Gillian Howell, Rachel Rick, Ione Branton Publisher: Laura White Cover and text design: Helen Townson Illustrations by Emily Skinner, Graham Cameron Illustration Editorial: Rachel Nickolds, Kirsty Taylor, Becca Law, Jennie Clifford, Estelle Lloyd

Typesetting: Aptara Inc. Printed in the United Kingdom A catalogue record for this title is available from the British Library.

